

# Contents

## A-Z

Owner's Handbook  
for Vehicle



The Ultimate  
Driving Machine



# THE BMW 2 SERIES ACTIVE TOURER. OWNER'S HANDBOOK.

**BMW EfficientDynamics**  
Less emissions. More driving pleasure.



## **2 Series Active Tourer**

### **Owner's Handbook for the vehicle**

Congratulations on your choice of a BMW.

The better you are acquainted with your vehicle, the easier you will find it is to handle. We would therefore like to offer you the following advice:

Please read the Owner's Handbook before setting out in your new BMW. Also use the integrated Owner's Handbook in your vehicle. It contains important notes on how to operate the vehicle, enabling you to derive maximum benefit from the technical advantages of your BMW. It also contains useful information which will help you to uphold both your BMW's operating safety, road safety, and its full resale value.

If applicable, you will find updates after the editorial deadline in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

Supplementary information is provided in the other documents of on-board literature.

We wish you a safe and pleasant journey.



The Owner's Handbook is available as an app in many countries. You will find further information on the Internet at:

[www.bmw.com/bmw\\_drivers\\_guide](http://www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide)

© 2015 Bayerische Motoren Werke  
Aktiengesellschaft  
Munich, Germany  
Not to be reproduced, wholly or in part, without written  
permission from BMW AG, Munich.  
English X/15, 11 15 490  
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached  
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

# Contents

For quick access to a particular topic or item, please consult the detailed alphabetical index, see page 264.

## 6 Notes

### Overview

- 12 Cockpit
- 16 iDrive
- 24 Voice control system
- 27 Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

### Controls

- 32 Opening and closing
- 51 Adjusting
- 63 Carrying children in safety
- 72 Driving
- 87 Displays
- 105 Lights
- 111 Security
- 132 Driving stability control systems
- 137 Driving comfort
- 160 Climate
- 167 Interior equipment
- 175 Storage compartments

### Driving hints

- 182 Driving precautions
- 186 Loads
- 188 Towing a trailer or using rear luggage rack
- 193 Saving fuel

### Mobility

- 202 Refuelling
- 204 Fuel
- 206 Wheels and tyres
- 214 Engine compartment
- 216 Engine oil
- 220 Coolant
- 222 Maintenance
- 224 Replacing parts
- 236 Help in the event of a breakdown
- 243 General care

### Reference

- 250 Technical data
- 262 Appendix
- 264 Everything from A to Z

# Notes

## About this Owner's Handbook

### Orientation

The quickest access to a particular topic or item is by consulting the alphabetical index.

The first chapter is recommended for an initial overview of the vehicle.

### Updates after going to press

As a result of updates after the editorial deadline, there may be differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the following Owner's Handbooks:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide App.

If applicable, you will find notes on updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

### Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Handbook for navigation, entertainment and communication is available as a printed book from Service.

The topics of navigation, entertainment and communication can also be called up using the following media:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Handbook on the Control Display.
- ▷ BMW Driver's Guide App.

## Additional sources of information

The Service Partner of the manufacturer will be happy to answer any further questions.

### Internet

Information on BMW, for example on technology, on the Internet: [www.bmw.com](http://www.bmw.com).

### BMW Driver's Guide App



The Owner's Handbook is available as an app in many countries. You will find further information on the Internet at:  
[www.bmw.com/bmw\\_drivers\\_guide](http://www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide)

## Symbols and displays

### Symbols in the Owner's Handbook

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

"..." identifies texts on a display in the vehicle for selecting functions.

... Identifies commands for the voice control system.

...<< Identifies replies by the voice control system.

### Handling steps

The handling steps to be carried out are shown as a numbered list. The sequence of steps must be followed.

1. First handling step.
2. Second handling step.

## Lists

Lists without a mandatory sequence or alternative possibilities are shown as a list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

## Symbol for components and assemblies

 Recommends that you study the relevant section of this Owner's Handbook in connection with a particular part or assembly.

## Vehicle equipment

This Owner's Handbook describes all models and all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. This Owner's Handbook may contain descriptions and illustrations of equipment not featured in your vehicle, for example due to selected special equipment or national version.

This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems.

Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

If certain equipment and models are not described in this Owner's Handbook, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Handbooks provided.

In right-hand drive vehicles, some control functions are arranged differently from those shown in the illustrations.

## Built-date

The 'built-date' of your vehicle is indicated underneath the door post on the driver's door.

The 'built-date' is defined as 'the calendar month and the calendar year in which the body shell and the powertrain subassemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line'.

## Status of the Owner's Handbook

### General

The high level of safety and quality of vehicles is ensured by continuous enhancement. In rare instances, your car may therefore differ from the information supplied here.

### For Australia/New Zealand: general

When reading this Owner's Handbook, please bear the following in mind: to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards, we pursue a policy of continuous, ongoing development. Because modifications in the design of both vehicles and accessories may be introduced at any time, your own vehicle's equipment may vary from that described in this handbook. For the same reason, it is also impossible to guarantee that all descriptions will be completely accurate in all respects.

We must therefore request your understanding of the fact that the manufacturer of your vehicle is unable to recognise legal claims based on discrepancies between the data, illustrations and descriptions in this Owner's Handbook and your own vehicle's equipment. Please note, too, that some of the optional equipment described in this handbook is not available on Australian models due to restrictions imposed by Australian Design Rules and other requirements.

Should you require any further information, please contact your Service Partner or a qualified specialist workshop, who will be pleased to advise you.

### Updates after going to press

As a result of updates after the editorial deadline, there may be differences between the printed Owner's Handbook and the following Owner's Handbooks:

- ▶ Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle.
- ▶ Online Owner's Handbook.
- ▶ BMW Driver's Guide App.

If applicable, you will find notes on updates in the appendix of the printed Owner's Handbook for the vehicle.

## Your own safety

### Warranty

Your vehicle is technically designed for the operating conditions and permit requirements prevalent in the country to which it was first delivered - approval. If your vehicle is to be operated in another country, it may have to be adapted to any prevailing different operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you cannot lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. A Service Partner is able to provide further information.

### Maintenance and repair

Advanced technology behind this vehicle, for example the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, necessitates adapted methods of maintenance and repair.

Consequently, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having corresponding work carried out by a BMW Service Partner. If you select a different specialist workshop, BMW recommends that you select a workshop that can carry out the corresponding work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications and works with appropriately trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Handbook as "another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop".

If such work, e.g. maintenance and repair, is performed inexpertly, it could result in conse-

quential damage and thus constitute a safety risk.

### Parts and accessories

BMW recommends using parts and accessory products that are specifically approved for this purpose by BMW.

You are recommended to consult a BMW Service partner for advice on genuine BMW parts and accessories, other BMW approved products and expert advice on all related matters.

The safety and compatibility of these products in conjunction with BMW vehicles have been checked by BMW.

BMW accepts product responsibility for genuine BMW parts and accessories. BMW cannot accept liability for parts or accessory products of any kind which it has not approved.

BMW is unable to assess each individual product of outside origin as to its suitability for use on BMW vehicles without safety risk. Nor can suitability be assured if an official permit has been issued for it in a specific country. Tests performed for such permits cannot always cover all operating conditions for BMW vehicles, and some of them therefore are insufficient.

### Data memory

Many of the electronic components of your vehicle contain data memories, which save technical information on vehicle condition, events and errors temporarily or permanently. This technical information documents the condition of a component, a module, a system or its environment:

- ▶ Operating states of system components, for example, fill levels.
- ▶ Status messages of the vehicle and individual components, for example, wheel rotation number/speed, movement delay, transverse acceleration.

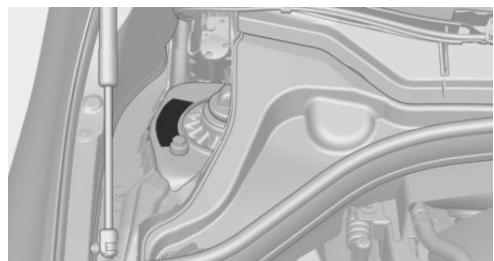
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults of important system components, for example, lights and brakes.
- ▷ Responses of the vehicle to special driving situations, for example, triggering of an airbag, using the stability control systems.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, for example, temperature.

This data is only of a technical nature and is for detecting and rectifying faults and optimisation of vehicle functions. Movement profiles over driven routes cannot be created from this data. When servicing, for example, during repairs, service processes, warranty cases or quality assurance, this technical information can be read by employees of the Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, including the manufacturer, from the event and fault data memories with special diagnostic tools. There, you will receive further information as needed. After rectifying the fault, the information in the fault memory is deleted or continuously overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations are conceivable in which this technical data can be personal in connection with other information, for example, accident report, damage to the vehicle, witness statements, etc. – possibly by enlisting the help of an expert.

Additional functions, contractually agreed with the customer, for example vehicle location in an emergency, allow certain pieces of vehicle data to be transferred from the vehicle.

## Vehicle identification number



The vehicle identification number is in the engine compartment.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 966 666 - X/15

## Overview

This summary of buttons, switches and displays  
serves as an initial guide.

In addition, it gives you an insight into the  
principles behind the various ways in which  
functions can be performed.

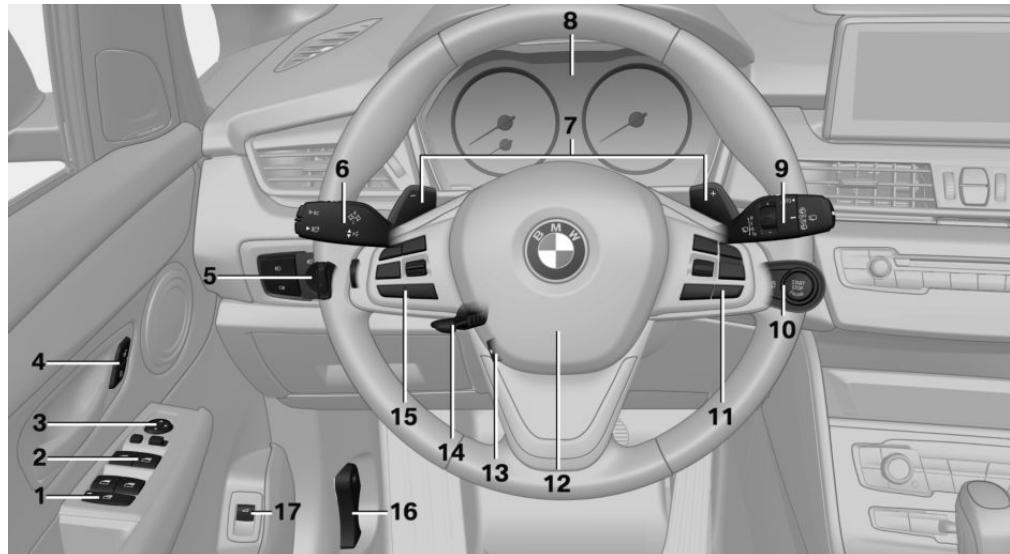
# Cockpit

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the se-

lected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Around the steering wheel



- 1** Safety switch for window in rear passenger compartment [48](#)

- 2** Power windows [46](#)

- 3** Exterior mirror operation [60](#)

- 4** Central locking system



Unlocking [37](#)



Locking [37](#)

- 5** Lights



Front fog lights [109](#)



Rear fog lights [109](#)



Lights off  
Daytime driving lights [107](#)



Side lights [105](#)

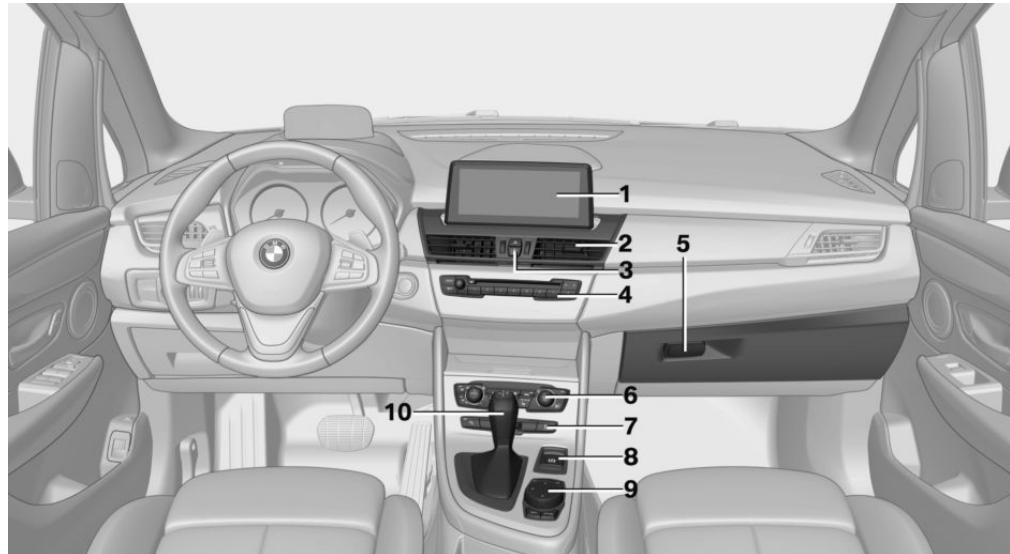


Low-beam headlights [105](#)

-  Automatic driving lights control 106  
Cornering light 107  
High-beam assistance 108  
 Instrument lighting 109  
 Headlight beam throw adjustment 108
- 6** Steering-column lever, left  
 Turn indicator 78  
 High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 78  
 High-beam assistance 108  
 Parking lights 106  
 On-board computer 98
- 7** Shift paddles 83  
**8** Instrument cluster 87  
**9** Steering-column lever, right  
 Wiper 79  
 Rain sensor 80  
 Cleaning the windows and headlights 80  
 Rear wipers 81  
 Cleaning rear window 81
- 10**  Start/stop engine and switch ignition on/off 73  
 Auto Start Stop function 74
- 11** Buttons on steering wheel, right  
 Entertainment source  
 Volume control  
 Voice control 24  
 Telephone  
 Knurled wheel for selection lists 97
- 12** Horn, total area  
**13**  Steering wheel heating 62
- 14** Steering wheel adjustment 62  
**15** Buttons on steering wheel, left  
 Speed limiter 128  
 Cruise Control on/off, interrupt 147  
 Active Cruise Control on/off, interrupt 137  
 Resume speed 147, 137  
 Traffic-queue assistant on/off 143  
 Traffic-queue assistant: Cruise Control set distance 143
- Rocker switch for Cruise Control 147, 137
- 16** Unlock bonnet 215

17 Opening the tailgate 38

## Around the centre console



1 Control Display 16

2 Ventilation 165

3  Hazard warning lights 236



Intelligent Safety 120

4 Radio/Multimedia

5 Glove box 176

6 Climate 160

7  Park Distance Control, PDC 149

Rear-view camera 152

Park assistant 155



Dynamic Stability Control, DSC 132



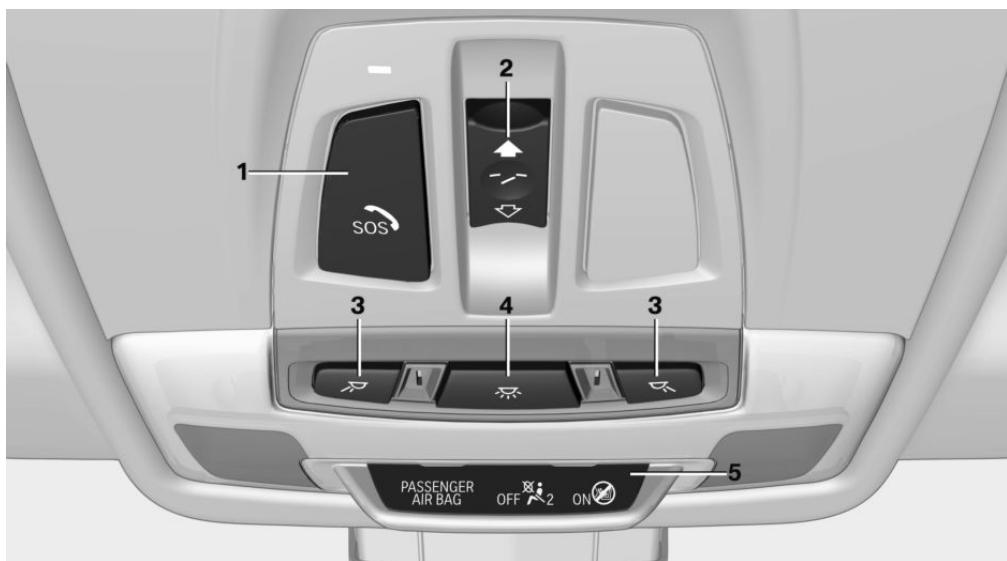
Drive experience switch 135

8 Parking brake 76

9 Controller with buttons 17

10 Gear selector lever 83

## Around the headlining



- |          |  |  |          |  |   |
|----------|--|--|----------|--|---|
| <b>1</b> |  | Intelligent emergency call <a href="#">236</a> | <b>4</b> |  | Interior light <a href="#">110</a>                        |
| <b>2</b> |  | Glass Roof <a href="#">48</a>                  | <b>5</b> |  | Front passenger airbag indicator lamp <a href="#">113</a> |
| <b>3</b> |  | Reading lights <a href="#">110</a>             |          |  |   |

# iDrive

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Principle

iDrive integrates the functions of a large number of switches. These functions can therefore be controlled from one central point.



### WARNING

Operating integrated informations systems and communication devices during the journey can distract from traffic. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only operate the systems or devices if permissible in the traffic situation. Stop if necessary and operate the systems or devices with the vehicle at a standstill.◀

## Overview of controls

### Control functions



- 1 Control Display
- 2 Controller with buttons and touchpad, depending on equipment

### Control Display

#### Notes

- ▷ To clean the Control Display, comply with the information regarding care.
- ▷ To avoid risk of damage to the Control Display, do not place objects in front of the Control Display.
- ▷ If the Control Display is exposed to very high temperatures, for example because of intensive sunshine, there may be a reduction in brightness and the Control Display may even switch itself off. Normal functions will be resaved when the temperature is reduced, for example by shading or using the air conditioning system.

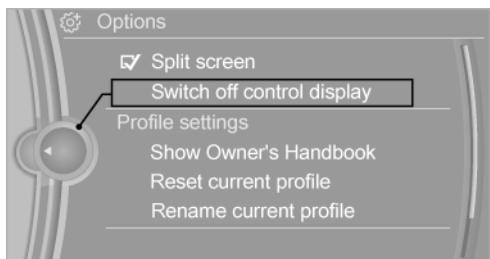
### Switching on

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press the Controller.

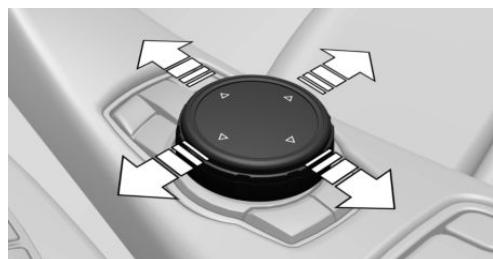
### Switching off

1. Press the button.

## 2. "Switch off control display"



## 3. Tilting in four directions.

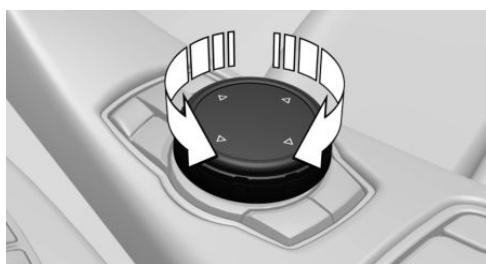


## Controller with navigation system

The buttons can be used to call up menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and alter settings.

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

### 1. Turning.



### 2. Pressing.



## Buttons on the Controller

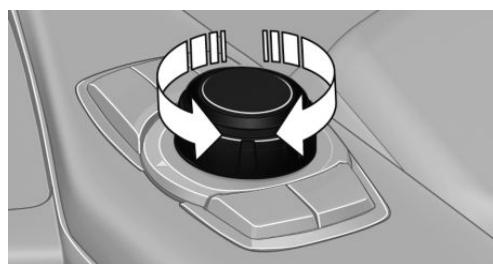
Press the but-	Function
ton	

MENU	Calls up the main menu.
RADIO	Calls up the Radio menu.
MEDIA	Calls up the multimedia menu.
NAV	Calls up the Navigation menu.
TEL	Calls up the Telephone menu.
BACK	Displays the previous screen.
OPTION	Calls up the Options menu.

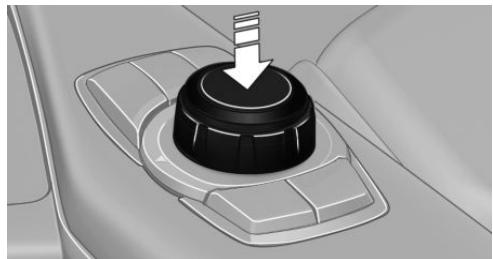
## Controller without navigation system

The buttons can be used to call up menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and alter settings.

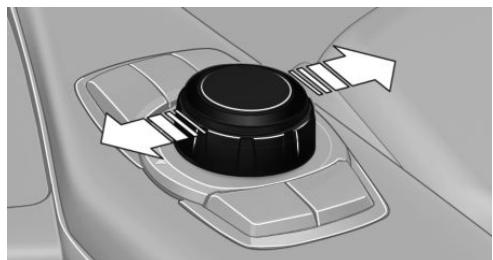
### 1. Turning.



## 2. Pressing.



## 3. Tilting in four directions.



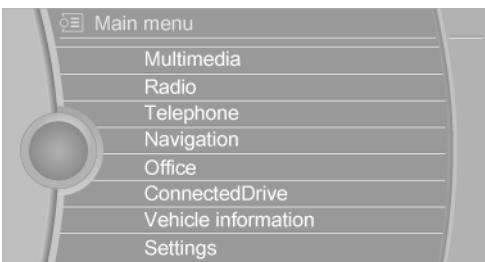
### Buttons on the Controller

Press the button	Function
MENU	Calls up the main menu.
AUDIO	Calls up last heard audio menu, change between audio menus.
TEL	Calls up the Telephone menu.
BACK	Call up previous table.
OPTION	Calls up the Options menu.

## Operating principle

### Calling up the main menu

Press the button.



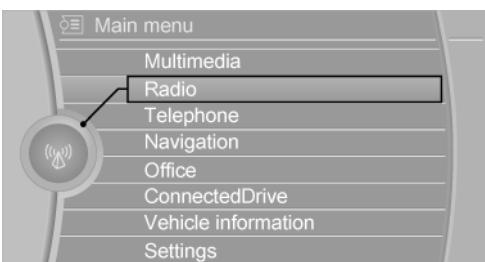
The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

### Selecting a menu item

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the Controller.

### Menu items in the Owner's Handbook

In this Owner's Handbook, the menu items that are to be selected are shown in quotation marks, for example "Settings".

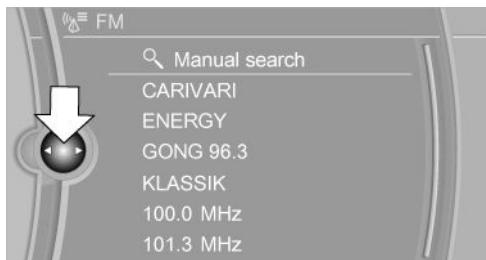
### Switching between screens

After a menu item has been selected, for example "Radio", a new screen is displayed. Screens can appear one on top of the other.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the left.
- The current screen is closed and the previous screen is displayed.
- Pressing the BACK button reopens the previous screen. The current screen is not closed.

- ▷ Tilt the Controller to the right.

A new screen is opened and overlaid.

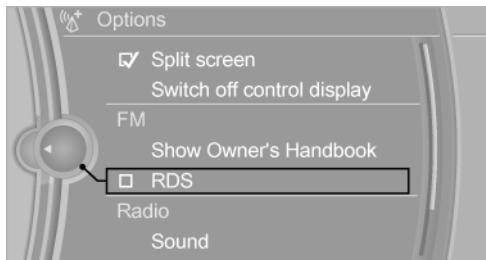


White arrows to the left or right indicate that other screens can be called up.

## Calling up the Options menu

Press the button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



Alternatively, tilt the Controller repeatedly to the right until the "Options" menu is displayed.

## Options menu

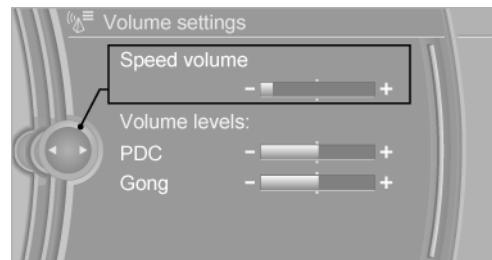
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:

- ▷ Screen settings, for example "Split screen".
- ▷ Operating options for the selected main menu, for example for "Radio".
- ▷ If applicable, other operating options for the selected menu, for example "Save station".

## Adjusting the settings

1. Select a field.

2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the Controller.

## Enabling/disabling functions

Some menu items are preceded by a checkbox. This indicates whether the function is enabled or disabled. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Function is enabled.

Function is disabled.

## Touchpad

Some of the functions of the iDrive can be operated with the touchpad of the Controller.

## Selecting functions

1. "Settings"
2. "Touchpad"
3. Select desired functions.
  - ▷ "Write": enter letters and numbers.
  - ▷ "Interactive map": operate interactive card.
  - ▷ "Browser": enter Internet addresses.
  - ▷ "Audio feedback": the letters and numbers entered are read out.

## Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires a bit of practice to begin with. Pay attention to the following when entering:

- ▷ The system recognises upper and lower case and digits. It may be necessary to switch between upper and lower case, digits and characters, see page 23, for entering.
- ▷ Enter symbols as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Relevant symbols, such as accents or full stops are always known ambiguously with the letter. The input option depends on the language that has been set. You may need to enter special characters using the Controller.
- ▷ To delete a character, swipe the touchpad towards the left.
- ▷ To enter a space, swipe towards the right in the middle of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a hyphen, swipe towards the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter an underscore, swipe towards the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

## Operating interactive map and Internet

The Interactive map of the navigation system and websites can be moved using the touchpad.

Function	Controls
Move interactive map or web pages.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/reduce interactive map or web pages.	Pinch or open up your fingers on the touchpad.
Show menu or open a link on the Internet.	Tap once.

## Adjusting the settings

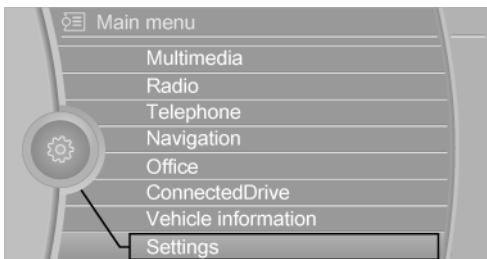
Settings on the Control Display, such as volume, for example, can be made using the touchpad. To do this swipe left or right as appropriate.

## Example: setting the clock

### Setting the clock

On the Control Display:

1.  Press the button. The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the Controller until "Settings" is highlighted and press the Controller.



3. If necessary, tilt the Controller to the left to display "Time/date".
4. Turn the Controller until "Time/date" is highlighted and press the Controller.



5. Turn the Controller until "Time:" is highlighted and press the Controller.



6. Turn the Controller to set the hour and press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller to set the minutes and press the Controller.

## Status information

### Status field

The following information is displayed in the status field on the top right:

- ▷ Time.
- ▷ Current entertainment source.
- ▷ Sound output on/off.
- ▷ Reception level of mobile telephone network.
- ▷ Phone status.
- ▷ Reception of traffic reports.

### Symbols in the status field

The symbols are combined in the following groups:

### Symbols for radio

Symbol	Meaning
TP	Traffic Information switched on.

### Symbols for telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Reception level of mobile telephone network. Symbol flashes: network search.
	No mobile telephone network available.
	Bluetooth switched on.

Symbol	Meaning
	Data transfer active.
	Roaming active.
	Text message received.
	SIM card check.
	SIM card disabled.
	SIM card not found.
	PIN required.

### Symbols for entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player.
	AUX-IN port.
	USB audio interface.
	Audio interface mobile telephone.

### Other functions

Symbol	Meaning
	Spoken instructions switched off.
	Determining the current vehicle position.

## Split screen

### General

In the split screen view, additional information can be displayed on the right-hand side of the screen, for example information from the on-board computer.

This information remains visible in the split screen view even if a switch is made to another menu.

## Switching the split screen view on and off

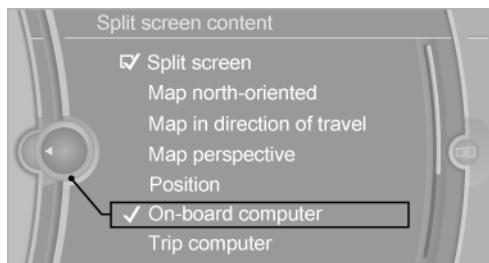
On the Control Display:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Split screen"

## Selecting display

On the Control Display:

1.  Press the button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Tilt the Controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the Controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.



## Saving a function

1. Highlight the function using the iDrive.
2.  ...  Press and hold the desired button until a signal sounds.

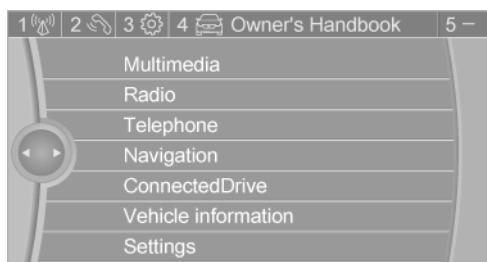
## Performing a function

-  ...  Press the button.
- The function is carried out immediately. If you have selected a telephone number, for example, the connection will also be established.

## Displaying assignment of buttons

Touch the buttons with your finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed at the top edge of the screen.



## Favourites buttons

### General

iDrive functions can be saved on the favourites buttons and called up directly, for example radio stations, navigation destinations, telephone numbers and shortcuts into the menu.

The settings are saved for the current profile.

### Without navigation system and telephone

On the buttons, only the radio transmitter can be saved.

## Clearing assignment of buttons

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approximately 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

## Deleting personal data in vehicle

### Principle

Vehicle stores personal data, depending on how it is used, such as stored radio stations. This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

## General

The following data can be deleted, depending on equipment:

- ▷ Personal Profile settings.
- ▷ Saved radio stations.
- ▷ Saved favourites buttons.
- ▷ Trip and on-board computer values.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, for example saved destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for example favourites, cook-ies.
- ▷ Voice memos.
- ▷ Login accounts.
- ▷ RemoteApp smartphone pairing.

It can take up to 30 minutes in total to delete data.

## Operating requirements

Data can only be deleted at a standstill.

## Deleting data

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

1. Switch on ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. Calling up "Options".
4. "Delete personal data"
5. "Continue"
6. "OK"

## Entering letters and numbers

### General

On the Control Display:

1. Turn Controller and select letters or numbers.

2. If applicable, select other letters or numbers.
3. Select "OK" to confirm the input.

Symbol	Function
◀	Press the Controller: deletes a letter or digit.
◀	Press and hold down the Controller: deletes all numbers or letters.

## Change between upper/lower case, numbers and symbols

Depending on the menu, the input of lower case or upper case letters, numbers and symbols is possible:

Symbol	Function
A <sup>B</sup> C	Enter letters.
1@+	Enter numbers.
abc or ABC	Tilt the Controller up.

## Without navigation system

@<sup>A</sup> A<sup>a</sup> a<sup>@</sup> Select the symbol.

## Entry comparison

Input of names and addresses: the selection is gradually narrowed down and possibly supplemented with every subsequent letter that you enter.

Inputs are continuously compared with the data saved in the vehicle.

- ▷ Letters available for entry are restricted to those present in the vehicle data.
- ▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages available on the Control Display.

# Voice control system

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Principle

- ▷ Through the voice control system most functions shown in the Control Display can be operated by spoken commands. The system supports spoken input.
- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be operated via the voice control system.
- ▷ The system has a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ... Indicates commands for the voice control system in the Owner's Handbook.

## Requirements

On the control display set a language that is also supported by the voice control system, so that the vehicle can identify spoken commands.

Setting the language, see page 101.

## Issuing voice commands

### Activating the voice control system



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for acoustic signal.
3. Issue the command.

Command detected by voice control system is announced and displayed in instrument cluster.

Symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice control system is active.

If no further spoken commands are possible, switch to iDrive to control the function in this case.

### Switching off the voice control system



- Press the button on the steering wheel or say „Cancel.“

## Possible commands

Most of the menu items on the Control Display can be called up using spoken commands.

The possible commands depend on which menu is currently displayed on the Control Display.

For various functions there are short commands.

Several list entries, for example telephone book entries, can also be selected using the voice control system. When doing this, list entries are to be spoken exactly as they are shown in the relevant list.

### Having possible commands read aloud

Possible commands can be read aloud: „Voice commands.«

If, for example, the menu "Settings" is displayed, the commands for the settings are announced.

## Running functions using short commands

Main menu functions can be performed immediately using short commands, almost irrespective of which menu item is selected, for example ›Vehicle status‹.

## Help dialogue to voice control system

Call up help dialogue: ›Help‹.

Further commands for help dialogue:

- ▷ ›Help with examples‹: information on the current possible operations and the most important commands for this are read out.
- ▷ ›Help with voice input‹: information on the operating principle of the voice control system is read out.

## An example: call up sound settings

### Using main menu

Commands on the menu are read out so they can also be selected using the controller.

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.

2.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Sound‹

### Through short command

Desired sound setting can also be started using a shortcut.

1. If necessary, switch on entertainment audio output.

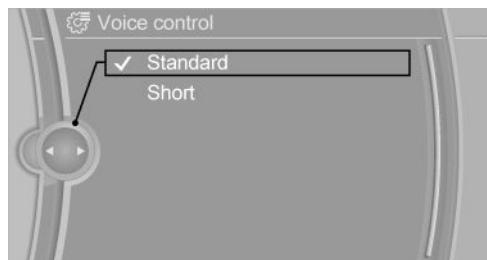
2.  Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Sound‹

## Setting the speech dialogue

You can set whether the system uses the standard dialogue or the short variant,

With the short variants of the speech dialogue, the system announcements are played in shortened form.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/units"
3. "Voice contr.:"
4. Select the setting.



## Adjusting volume

Turn the volume knob during the voice instructions until the desired volume is obtained.

- ▷ The volume is retained even if you change the volume of other audio sources.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the currently used profile.

## Information regarding emergency calls

The voice control system should not be used for emergency calls. Under stress, the spoken language and voice pitch can change, which

could unnecessarily delay the connection of your call.

Instead, use the SOS button, see page [236](#), in the area of the interior mirror.

## Operating conditions

- ▷ Commands, digits and letters should be pronounced fluently, with the usual emphasis, and at a normal volume and speed.
- ▷ Always speak the commands in the language of the voice control system.
- ▷ When selecting the radio station, use the customary pronunciation of the station name as it is displayed on the Control Display.  
›Station ...‹, for example, Classic Radio station.
- ▷ Doors, windows and the Glass Roof should be kept closed to avoid noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid background noises in the vehicle while you are speaking.

# Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Integrated Owner's Handbook in the vehicle

The integrated Owner's Handbook can be shown in the control display. It particularly describes the equipment and functions present in the vehicle.

### Components of the integrated Owner's Handbook

The integrated Owner's Handbook consists of three parts, which provide various levels of information or access possibilities.

#### Quick Reference

Important information is found in the quick reference for the operation of the vehicle, the operation of fundamental vehicle functions or in case of breakdown. This information can also be displayed when driving.

#### Search by pictures

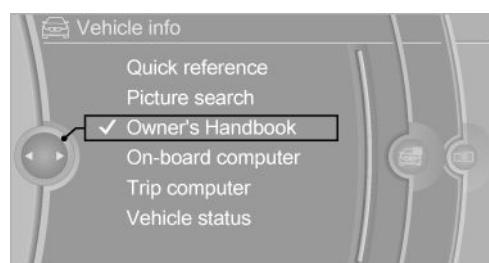
Using the search by pictures, information and descriptions can be searched using pictures. For example, this is particularly helpful when the description of a piece of equipment is needed, which cannot be named.

### Owner's Handbook

Here, information and descriptions can be searched via the index by directly entering a search term.

#### Selecting components

1.  Press the button.
2. Turn the Controller and select "Vehicle information".
3. Press the Controller.
4. Select desired area:
  - ▷ "Quick reference"
  - ▷ "Picture search"
  - ▷ "Owner's Handbook"



#### Browsing within the Owner's Handbook

##### Page by page with link access

Turn the controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

##### Page by page without link access

Browse the pages directly, skipping links.

Highlight the symbol once. Then simply press the controller to browse from page to page.



Browse back.



Browse forward.

## Context-sensitive help - Owner's Handbook for the currently selected function

Suitable information can be displayed directly.

### Calling up with iDrive operation

Switch to the Options menu directly from the application on the Control Display:

1. Press the button or tilt the Controller repeatedly to the right until the "Options" menu appears.
2. "Show Owner's Handbook"

### Calling up with display of a check control message

Directly from the check control message on the Control Display:

"Show Owner's Handbook"

### Switching between function and Owner's Handbook

You can use the Control Display to switch from a function, for example radio, to the Owner's Handbook, and then back and forth between the two displays:

1. Press the button or tilt the Controller repeatedly to the right until the "Options" menu appears.
2. "Show Owner's Handbook"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Handbook.

4. Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed function.

5. Press the button again to switch back to the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook.

To switch continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Handbook, repeat steps 4 and 5. As you do so, new screens are opened.

### Favourites buttons

#### General

The Owner's Handbook can be saved in the Favourites buttons and called up directly.

#### Saving

1. Select "Owner's Handbook" using the iDrive.
2. Press the desired button for longer than two seconds.

#### Using

1. Press the button.

2. The Owner's Handbook is displayed immediately.





START  
STOP  
ENGINE

## Controls

The information in this chapter helps you to operate your vehicle confidently. All equipment designed to make your journey safer and more comfortable is described here.

# Opening and closing

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Remote control/keys

### General

The delivery specification includes two remote controls with integrated keys.

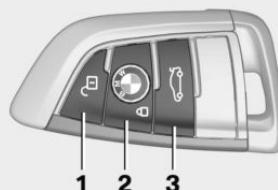
Every remote control contains a replaceable battery.

The functions of buttons may be set depending on equipment and national version. Settings, see page 44.

For each remote control, personal settings are stored in the vehicle. Personal profile, see page 34.

Further information on servicing is also stored in the remote controls Service data in the remote control, see page 222

### Overview



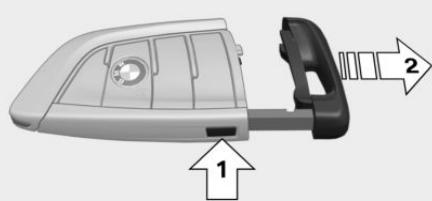
1 Unlocking

2 Locking

3 Unlock tailgate

With automatic tailgate operation: opening/closing tailgate

### Integrated key

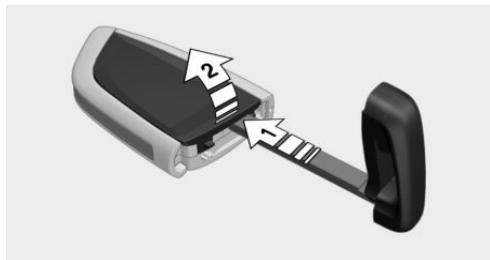


Press button, arrow 1, and pull out key, arrow 2.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Driver's door.
- ▷ Glove box on the passenger side.

## Replacing the battery



1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control.
2. Place integrated key under the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and pry off the cover with a lever motion of the integrated key.
3. Remove battery compartment cover, arrow 2.
4. Insert a new battery of the same type with the positive side facing upwards.
5. Press the cover back into position.



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

## New remote controls

New remote controls are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Loss of remote controls

The lost remote control can be blocked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

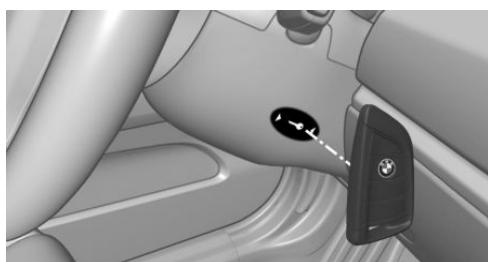
## Special ID of the remote control

The ignition can be switched on or the engine started even in one of the following situations:

- ▷ Interference in the radio transmission to the remote control from external sources, for example by radio masts.
- ▷ Flat battery in the remote control.
- ▷ Interference in radio transmission due to mobile radio device in the immediate vicinity of the remote control.
- ▷ Interference in radio transmission due to a charging procedure in mobile devices, for example charging a mobile telephone.

If an attempt is made to switch on the ignition or start the engine, a Check Control message is displayed.

## Starting the engine in the event of emergency detection of the remote control



Steptronic transmission: if there is a corresponding Check Control message, hold the remote control with its back against the marking on the steering column. The tailgate button on the remote control should be at the same level as the marking. Within 10 seconds, press the start/stop button whilst holding the brake pedal pressed.

Manual gearbox: if there is a corresponding Check Control message, hold the remote control with its back against the marking on the steering column. The tailgate button on the remote control should be at the same level as the marking. Within 10 seconds, press the start/stop button whilst holding the clutch pedal pressed.

If the remote control is not detected, change the position of the remote control slightly and repeat the procedure.

## Personal Profile

### Principle

Individual settings of several drivers can be saved using Personal profile and called up at a later point in time.

### General

Three profiles are provided, in which personal vehicle settings can be saved. Each remote control is allocated to one of these driver profiles.

When the vehicle is unlocked with a remote control, the allocated driver profile is activated. All the settings saved in the driver profile are applied automatically.

If several drivers each use their own remote control, the vehicle will adapt to their personal settings when it is unlocked. These settings are also resaved if the vehicle is used in the intervening period by someone with a different remote control.

Changes to settings are saved automatically in the currently used driver profile.

If a different driver profile is selected via iDrive, the settings saved there are automatically applied. The new driver profile is allocated to the remote control currently used.

In addition, a guest profile is available that is not allocated to any remote control: it can be used for making settings on the vehicle without changing the driver profiles.

### Settings

Settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The extent of settings that can be saved depends on the country and equipment.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.

- ▷ Light.
- ▷ Air conditioning.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Favourites buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, sound.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ Park Distance Control PDC.
- ▷ Rear-view camera.
- ▷ Head-Up Display.
- ▷ Drive experience switch.
- ▷ Driver's seat position, exterior mirror position, steering wheel position.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.

### Profile management

#### Calling up profiles

Independently of the remote control that is used, another profile can be called up.

Via iDrive:

1. "Settings"
  2. "Profiles"
  3. Select a profile.
- ▷ The settings saved in the called-up profile are made automatically.
  - ▷ The profile called up is assigned to the remote control currently used.
  - ▷ If the profile has already been allocated to another remote control, this profile applies to both remote controls. It is no longer possible to differentiate between the settings of both remote controls.

#### Renaming profiles

To avoid mixing up the profiles, each profile can be given a personal name.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

## Resetting profiles

Settings of the active profile are reset to factory settings.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"

## Exporting profiles

Most of the settings of the active profile can be exported.

This may be useful for securing and calling up personal settings, for example, before taking the vehicle into a Service Centre. The saved profiles can be taken to another vehicle with the Personal Profile function.

The following options are available for export:

- ▷ Via BMW Online.
- ▷ Via USB interface to a USB medium.

Common file systems for USB media are supported. FAT32 and exFAT formats are recommended for exporting profiles, export might not be possible with other formats.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
  2. "Profiles"
  3. "Export profile"
  4. BMW Online: "BMW Online"
- USB interface: "USB device"

## Importing profiles

Profiles exported via BMW Online can be imported via BMW Online.

Profiles saved on a USB medium can be imported using the USB interface.

Existing settings are overwritten with the imported profile.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
  2. "Profiles"
  3. "Import profile"
  4. BMW Online: "BMW Online"
- USB interface: "USB device"

## Using a guest profile

With the guest profile, individual settings can be made which are not saved in any of the three personal profiles.

This can be beneficial if a driver without their own profile uses the vehicle temporarily.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Guest"

Note: the guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not allocated to the current remote control.

## Showing profile list at start

The profile list can be shown at the start to select the desired profile.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Call up "Options".
4. "Profile list at start"

## With the remote control

### Note

#### WARNING

Persons remaining in the vehicle or pets left inside can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. The vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. Danger of injury. Carry the remote control with you so that you can open the vehicle from the outside.◀

### Unlocking

 Press the button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, see page 44, the following entrances are unlocked.

- ▶ The driver door and the fuel filler flap.
- ▶ All doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler flap.

The following functions are also carried out:

- ▶ The interior light is switched on. At dark, the courtesy light is additionally switched on. This function is not available if the interior light was switched off manually.
- ▶ The welcome light is switched on if this function was activated.
- ▶ Exterior mirrors folded in using comfort closing are folded out.
- ▶ Anti-theft system is switched off.
- ▶ The alarm system, see page 45, is switched off.

### Comfort opening

 Keep the button on the remote control pressed after unlocking.

The windows and Glass Roof are opened for as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

### Locking

#### WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside, it cannot be unlocked from the inside in some country versions.

If persons must remain in the vehicle for an extended period of time and are exposed to extreme heat or cold, there is a risk of injury or life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.◀

The driver's door must be closed.

 Press the button on the remote control.

All doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap are locked.

Anti-theft system is switched on. It prevents the doors from being able to be unlocked using the locking buttons or the door openers.

The alarm system, see page 45, is switched on.

### Comfort closing

 Keep the button on the remote control pressed after locking.

The windows and the Glass Roof are closed for as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Exterior mirrors are folded in.

With the hazard warning lights switched on, the exterior mirror is not folded in.

#### WARNING

Body parts can be trapped during comfort closing. Danger of injury. During comfort closing, make sure that the area of movement is free.◀

### Switching on interior light and courtesy light

 With the vehicle locked, press the button on the remote control.

The courtesy light is only switched on at dark. This function is not available if the interior light was switched off manually.

If the button is pressed again within 10 seconds of locking, passenger compartment protection and tilt alarm sensor of alarm system, see page 46, are switched off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

## Unlocking tailgate

With automatic operation of the tailgate:

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.



Press the button on the remote control for approximately one second.

Tailgate opens slightly, regardless of whether vehicle is locked or unlocked.

With automatic operation of the tailgate, closed tailgate is automatically opened. To close opened tailgate, press and hold button of remote control until tailgate is closed.

Depending on the equipment and country version it can be set whether the doors are also locked. Adjust the settings, see page 44.

In some equipment versions, doors are also unlocked if appropriate

If the doors were not unlocked, the tailgate is locked again as soon as it is closed. For this reason, keep the remote control with you at all times and do not lay it in the boot, otherwise there is a risk of the remote control being locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.



### ATTENTION

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window and the heating conductor during the journey. Danger of damage to property. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the rear window.◀

## Malfunction

Detection of the remote control by the vehicle may be disrupted by the following circumstances, amongst others:

- ▶ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, see page 33.
- ▶ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▶ Shielding of the remote control by metallic objects.
- ▶ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metallic objects or electronic devices.

If there is a malfunction, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside without remote control, see page 37.

## Without remote control

### From outside



### WARNING

If the vehicle is locked from the outside, it cannot be unlocked from the inside in some country versions.

If persons must remain in the vehicle for an extended period of time and are exposed to extreme heat or cold, there is a risk of injury or life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there is someone inside it.◀



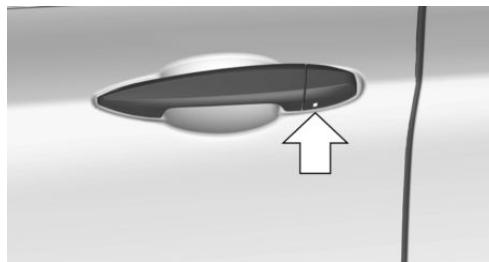
### ATTENTION

The door lock is firmly connected to the door. The door handle can be moved. Pulling the door handle when the integrated key is inserted can damage the paint or the key. Danger of damage to property. Pull out the integrated key before pulling on the outer door handle.◀

Unlock or lock the driver's door using the integrated key, see page 32, in the door lock. The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

### 1. Remove cover on the door lock.

To do that, push the integrated key from underneath into the opening until it stops, and remove the cover.



### 2. Unlock or lock the door lock.

## Alarm system

The alarm system is not armed if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

Alarm system is triggered if the vehicle has been unlocked using the door lock.

To end this alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control or turn on the ignition, with special ID of the remote control, see page 33, as necessary.

## From inside

### Unlocking and locking



Via buttons for central locking system.

- ▷ Pressing button locks vehicle when front doors are closed.

- ▷ Pressing button unlocks vehicle.

**Locking does not activate anti-theft protection for vehicle.**

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

In the event of an accident of sufficient severity, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning lights and interior lights illuminate.

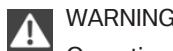
### Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Press button for central locking to unlock doors together and then pull door opener above armrest.
- ▷ Turn the door opener on the door to be opened. The other doors remain locked.

## Tailgate

### Notes

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.



### WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀

### Opening

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened.

Make sure that there is sufficient space.

## Opening from outside



- ▷ Press the button on the tailgate.
- ▷  Press the button on the remote control for approximately one second.

Doors are also unlocked if appropriate. Unlocking with remote control, see page 37.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swivelled upwards.

## Closing

### Notes

#### WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀

#### ATTENTION

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window and the heating conductor during the journey. Danger of damage to property. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the rear window.◀

## Closing



The recessed handles in the tailgate lining make it easier to pull the tailgate down.

## Automatic operation of the tailgate

### Adjusting the opening height

The extent to which the tailgate opens can be set.

#### ATTENTION

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀

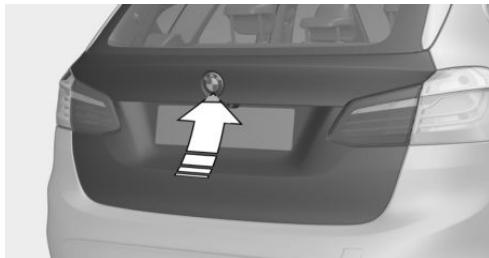
When setting the opening height, make sure that there is a space of at least 10 cm, 4 in above the tailgate.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tailgate"
3. Turn the Controller until the desired opening height is reached.
4. Press the Controller.

## Opening

#### ATTENTION

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀



▶ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

▶ Press the button on the remote control for approximately one second.

Doors are also unlocked if appropriate.  
Opening with remote control, see page 37.

▶ Pull button in driver's door compartment upwards.

When the vehicle is stationary, the tailgate opens automatically up to the set opening height.

The opening procedure is interrupted:

- ▶ When a button is pressed again.
- ▶ When starting the engine.
- ▶ If the vehicle begins to move.
- ▶ By pressing the button on the inside of the tailgate.

## Closing

### ATTENTION

Sharp or angular objects can hit the rear window and the heating conductor during the journey. Danger of damage to property. Cover the edges and make sure that sharp objects cannot strike the rear window.◀

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

Without Comfort Access:



▶ Press the button on the inside of the tailgate.

Pressing the button again stops the movement.

With Comfort Access:



▶ Press button on the inside of tailgate, arrow 1.

Pressing the button again stops the movement.

▶ Press the button, arrow 2.

The vehicle is locked after the tailgate has been closed. To do this, the driver's door must be closed and the remote control must be outside the vehicle in the vicinity of the tailgate.

Pressing the button again stops the movement.



- ▷ Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

Pressing the button again stops the movement.

- ▷  Keep button pressed on remote control until tailgate has closed. Releasing the button stops the movement.
- ▷  Press and hold button in driver's door compartment. Releasing stops the movement.

For this function, the remote control must be in the passenger compartment.

The tailgate closes.

The closing operation is interrupted:

- ▷ When starting the engine.
- ▷ When driving off suddenly.

## Manual operation



### WARNING

A locked tailgate can unexpectedly move during manual operation. Danger of injury or damage to property. Do not manually operate a locked tailgate. Have a check performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

In the case of an electrical defect, operate the unlocked tailgate manually, proceeding slowly and avoiding sudden movements.

## Comfort Access

### Principle

Access to the vehicle is possible without activating the remote control.

It is sufficient to have the remote control with you, for example in a trouser pocket.

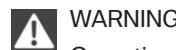
The vehicle automatically recognises the remote control when it is in the immediate vicinity or the interior of the vehicle.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- ▷ Unlocking/locking the vehicle.
- ▷ Comfort closing.
- ▷ Unlocking the tailgate separately.
- ▷ Opening/closing the tailgate contactlessly.
- ▷ Start the engine.

### Notes

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.



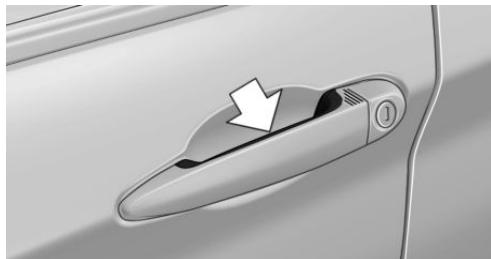
### WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀

### Functional requirements

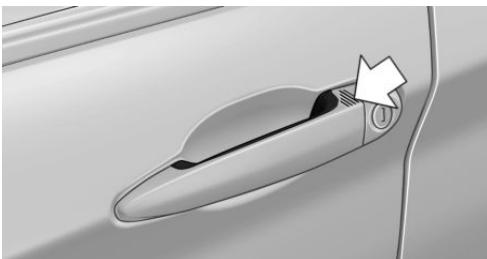
- ▷ No external sources of interference in the vicinity.
- ▷ To lock, the remote control must be located outside the vehicle in the area of the doors.
- ▷ Approximately 2 seconds need to elapse before the vehicle can be unlocked and locked again.
- ▷ An engine start is only possible if the remote control is in the vehicle.

## Unlocking



Firmly grab the handle on the driver's or front passenger's door, arrow.

This corresponds to pressing the  button on the remote control.

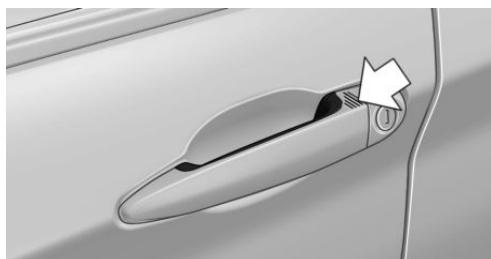


Use your finger to touch area on door handle of driver's or front passenger's door and keep your finger there without gripping door handle.

Corresponds to pressing and holding the button  on the remote control.

In addition to locking, windows and Glass Roof are closed and exterior mirrors are folded in.

## Locking



Use your finger to touch area on door handle of driver's or front passenger's door for approximately 1 second, without gripping door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the  button on the remote control.

To reduce the burden on the vehicle battery, make sure that the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off prior to locking.

## Unlocking tailgate individually

Press the button on the outside of the tailgate.

This corresponds to pressing the  button on the remote control.

Status of doors does not change.

Keep the remote control with you at all times and do not lay it in the boot, otherwise there is a risk of the remote control being locked inside the vehicle when the tailgate is closed.



### ATTENTION

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀

## Opening and closing the tailgate contactlessly

### General

The tailgate can be opened contactlessly if you carry the remote control. With automatic operation of the tailgate, it can also be closed contactlessly. Two sensors detect a foot movement forwards in the middle of the rear area and the tailgate opens or closes.

## Foot movement to be undertaken



### WARNING

During operation without contact, there is a risk of touching vehicle parts, for example the hot exhaust system. Danger of injury. Make sure you are standing securely when you perform the foot movement, and do not touch the vehicle.◀

1. Stand in the centre behind the vehicle, approximately an arm's length away from the rear of the vehicle.
2. A foot must move as far as possible under the vehicle in the direction of travel and be withdrawn again immediately. In this movement, the leg must pass through the range of both sensors.



## Opening

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The tailgate opens, regardless of whether it was locked or unlocked.

The hazard warning lights flash before opening.

If the remote control is within the sensor range, the tailgate can be accidentally opened by an unintentional or supposedly recognized foot movement.

The sensor range extends to approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.



### WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀



### ATTENTION

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀

## Closing

Perform the foot movement described previously.

The warning indicator flashes and an audible signal sounds before the tailgate closes.

Closing the tailgate has no effect on locking the vehicle.

To prevent the remote control from being locked in, do not place the remote control in the boot.

The closing operation may be interrupted due to a new foot movement.

If the remote control is within the sensor range, the tailgate can be accidentally closed by an unintentional or supposedly recognized foot movement.

The sensor range extends to approx. 1.50 m, 5 ft behind the rear area.



### WARNING

Operating the tailgate can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀



### ATTENTION

The tailgate swings rearwards and upwards when opened. Danger of damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is free.◀

## Malfunction

Detection of the remote control by the vehicle may be disrupted by the following circumstances, amongst others:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, see page 33.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by transmission masts or other equipment transmitting powerful signals.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control by metallic objects.
- ▷ Disruption of the radio link by mobile telephones or other electronic devices in the immediate vicinity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metallic objects or electronic devices.

In case of a fault, unlock and lock the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with the integrated key, see page 37.

## Settings

### Unlocking

Settings are saved in active profile, see page 34.

### Doors

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function:

- ▷ "Driver's door only"

Only the driver's door and fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

- ▷ "All doors"

The entire vehicle is unlocked.

## Tailgate

Depending on the equipment and country version, these settings are not provided.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3.  Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function:
  - ▷ "Tailgate"Depending on equipment, tailgate is unlocked or opened.
  - ▷ "Tailgate + door(s)"Depending on equipment, tailgate is unlocked or opened and doors are unlocked.

## Acknowledgement signal of the vehicle

Settings are saved in active profile, see page 34.

1. "Settings"
  2. "Doors/key"
  3. "Turn signals for lock/unl."
- Unlocking is acknowledged by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.

## Automatic locking

Settings are saved in active profile, see page 34.

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the desired function:
  - ▷ "Automatic relock"The vehicle is locked automatically after a short while if no door is opened after unlocking.
  - ▷ "Lock after driving away"On driving off, the vehicle is locked automatically.

## Calling up seat, mirror setting

The last adjusted driver's seat and exterior mirror position is saved for the currently used remote control.

When the vehicle is unlocked, this position is called up automatically if the function has been enabled.



### WARNING

Danger of trapping when moving the seats. Danger of injury or damage to property. Before making the setting, make sure that the movement area of the seat is clear.◀

Adjustment procedure is interrupted:

- ▷ By operating a switch of the seat adjustment.
- ▷ By touching a button of the seat and mirror memory.

## Enabling setting

1. "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. "Last seat position autom."

## Alarm system

### Principle

The alarm system is triggered when the vehicle is locked if:

- ▷ A door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened.
- ▷ Movements in the interior.
- ▷ The vehicle's incline changes, for instance if an attempt is made to jack it up and steal the wheels or to raise it prior to towing away.
- ▷ There is an interruption in the power supply from the battery.

The alarm system will respond briefly to unauthorised attempts to access the vehicle as follows:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm.

- ▷ Switching on the hazard warning lights.

## Switching on and off

At the same time as unlocking and locking the vehicle by remote control or using the Comfort Access the alarm system is switched on and off.

## Door lock with alarm system switched on

Alarm system is deactivated if the vehicle is unlocked using the door lock.

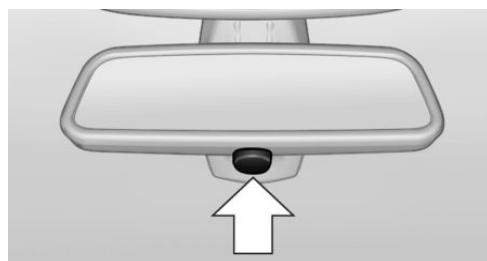
Switch off the alarm, see page 46.

## Tailgate with alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even with the alarm system switched on.

On closing the tailgate, it is locked again and monitored, as long as the doors are locked. The hazard warning lights flash once.

## Indicator lamp on the rear-view mirror



- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes every 2 seconds: The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator lamp flashes for approximately 10 seconds before it flashes every 2 seconds:  
Interior movement detector and tilt alarm sensor are not active because doors, bonnet or tailgate are not closed correctly. Correctly closed access points are secured.

If the access points that are still open are closed then the interior protection and tilt alarm sensor are switched on.

- ▷ The indicator lamp no longer illuminates after the vehicle has been unlocked:  
No attempt has been made to tamper with the vehicle.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the ignition is switched on, but for no longer than approximately five minutes:  
The alarm has been triggered.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior movement detector are switched off until the next time the vehicle is locked.

## Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if necessary using special ID of remote control, see page 33.
- ▷ For Comfort Access: completely grasp either front door handle when carrying remote control.

## Tilt alarm sensor

The incline of the vehicle is monitored.

Alarm system responds, for example, when there is an attempt to steal a wheel or when towing away.

## Interior movement detector

To ensure perfect functioning, the windows and Glass Roof must be closed.

## Avoiding false alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector can be switched off together, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ In washing bays or car washes.
- ▷ In two-level garages.
- ▷ During transport via motorail, car ferry or trailer.
- ▷ When there are animals in the vehicle.

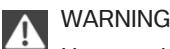
## Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior movement detector

 Press the button on the remote control again within 10 seconds, as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp illuminates for approximately 2 seconds and then flashes again.

## Power windows

### Note



### WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

## Overview





Power windows



Safety switch

## Opening

- ▷ Push the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window opens as long as the switch is held.

- ▷ Push the switch past the resistance point.

The window opens automatically. The movement is stopped by pressing the switch again.

See also: Comfort opening, see page 36, by remote control.

## Closing



### WARNING

Operating the windows can lead to parts of the body or objects becoming trapped. Danger of injury or damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is free.◀

- ▷ Pull the switch as far as the resistance point.

The window closes as long as the switch is held.

- ▷ Pull the switch past the resistance point.

The window closes automatically. Pulling the switch again stops the movement.

See also: Comfort closing, see page 36, by remote control.

See also: closing using Comfort Access, see page 41.

## After switching off the ignition

Windows can still be operated:

- ▷ For some time with radio readiness switched on.
- ▷ For approximately one minute with the ignition switched off.

## Anti-trap mechanism



**WARNING** Operating the windows can lead to parts of the body or objects becoming trapped. Danger of injury or damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is free.◀



**WARNING** Accessories on the windows, for example aerials, can impair the anti-trap mechanism. Danger of injury. Do not attach any accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

If the closing power exceeds a certain value on closing a window, the closing operation is interrupted.

The window opens again slightly.

## Closing without the anti-trap mechanism



**WARNING** Operating the windows can lead to parts of the body or objects becoming trapped. Danger of injury or damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is free.◀

If an external danger or ice does not allow you to close the windows normally, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

The anti-trap mechanism is restricted and the window opens slightly when the closing force exceeds a certain value.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approximately four seconds and hold it there.

The window closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

## Safety switch

### General

The safety switch can be used to prevent children from opening and closing the rear windows by means of the switches in the rear, for example.

### Notes

#### WARNING

Operating the windows can lead to parts of the body or objects becoming trapped. Danger of injury or damage to property. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the windows is free.◀

To prevent uncontrolled closing of the windows, press the safety switch e.g. when children or animals are transported in the rear.

### Switching on and off

#### Press the button.

When the safety function is switched on, the LED is illuminated.



### Notes

#### WARNING

Operating the Glass Roof can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the Glass Roof is free.◀

#### WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

## Panorama Glass Roof

### General

The Glass Roof and the sun blind can be operated separately or together with the same switch.

### Raising Glass Roof and closing raised Glass Roof

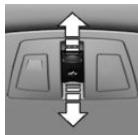


Press the top of the switch.

- ▷ From the closed position, the Glass Roof is raised and the sun blind opens slightly.
- ▷ The opened Glass Roof closes to the raised position.

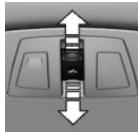
- The sun blind does not move.
- ▷ Raised Glass Roof is closed. The sun blind does not move.

## Opening/closing the Glass Roof and sun blind separately



- ▷ Push and hold the switch in the desired direction as far as the resistance point. The sun blind opens as long as the switch is held. The Glass Roof opens if the sun blind is already completely opened. The Glass Roof closes as long as the switch is held. If the Glass Roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun blind closes.
- ▷ Push the switch beyond the resistance point in the desired direction. The sun blind opens automatically. The Glass Roof opens automatically if the sun blind is already completely opened. The Glass Roof closes automatically. If the Glass Roof is already closed or is in the raised position, the sun blind closes automatically. Movement is stopped by pressing switch upwards.

## Opening and closing the Glass Roof and sun blind together



- Push the switch twice in rapid succession beyond the resistance point in the desired direction. The Glass Roof and the sun blind open together. Movement is stopped by pressing switch upwards.

- ▷ See also: Comfort opening, see page 36, and comfort closing, see page 36, by remote control.
- ▷ See also: closing using Comfort Access, see page 41.

## Comfort position

If Glass Roof is not completely opened by automatic function, this means comfort position has been reached. In this position, wind noise inside vehicle is at lowest level.

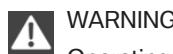
You can continue the movement by subsequently pressing the button.

## After switching off the ignition

The Glass Roof can still be opened or closed for approximately 1 minute after the ignition has been switched off.

## Anti-trap mechanism

If the closing power of the Glass Roof exceeds a certain value, the closing operation is interrupted from approximately the half-open position, or during closing from the raised position. The Glass Roof opens again slightly.



### WARNING

Operating the Glass Roof can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the Glass Roof is free.◀

## Closing without anti-trap mechanism from open position

In the event of danger from the outside, proceed as follows:

1. Slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there. The anti-trap mechanism is restricted and the Glass Roof opens slightly when the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Press the switch forwards once again beyond the resistance point and hold until the

Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Ensure that the closing area is clear.

### Closing without anti-trap mechanism from raised position

If there is a danger from the outside slide the switch forwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there.

The Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

### Initialising after power failure

The Glass Roof functions may be restricted after a power cut during the opening or closing operation.

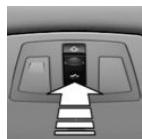
### Initialising the system

The system can be initialised when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialisation the Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

#### WARNING

Operating the Glass Roof can lead to parts of the body becoming trapped. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the Glass Roof is free.◀



Press the top of the switch and hold until the initialisation is complete:

- ▷ Initialisation begins within 15 seconds and is complete when the Glass Roof and sun blind are fully closed.

- ▷ The Glass Roof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

# Adjusting

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Safe seated position

A seated position that suitably reflects the requirements of the occupants is essential for relaxed driving with minimum fatigue.

In the event of an accident, the seated position plays an important role together with:

- ▷ Seat belts, see page 55.
- ▷ Head restraints, see page 57.
- ▷ Airbags, see page 111.

## Front seat

### Notes



#### WARNING

Seat adjustment during the journey can lead to unexpected seat movements. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only adjust the seat on the driver side when at a standstill.◀



#### WARNING

If the seat backrest is angled back too far, the protective effect of the seat belt will no longer be guaranteed. There is a danger of slipping under the seat belt in the event of an accident. Danger of injury or life. Set the seat before starting the journey. Place the seat

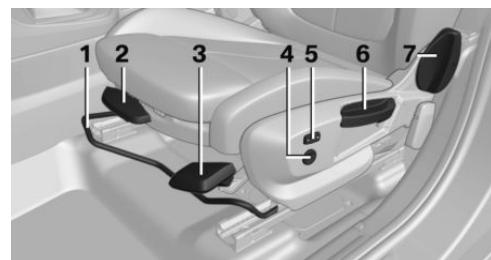
backrest in the most upright possible position, and do not change it during the journey.◀

#### WARNING

Danger of trapping when moving the seats. Danger of injury or damage to property. Before making the setting, make sure that the movement area of the seat is clear.◀

## Manually adjustable seats

### Overview



- 1 Forward/back
- 2 Thigh support
- 3 Seat angle
- 4 Lumbar support
- 5 Backrest width
- 6 Height
- 7 Backrest angle

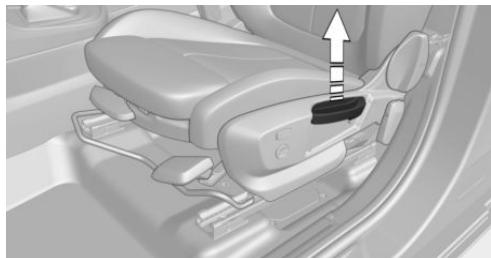
## Forward/back



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

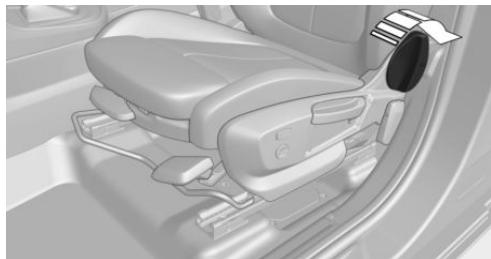
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

## Height



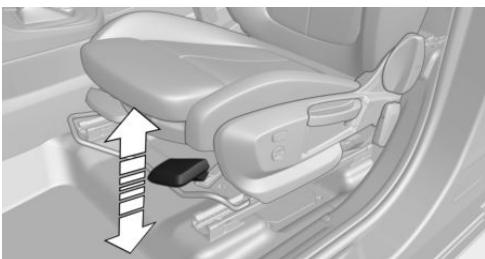
Pull the lever up or press the lever down until the desired height is reached.

## Backrest angle



Push lever and add or remove pressure on backrest as required.

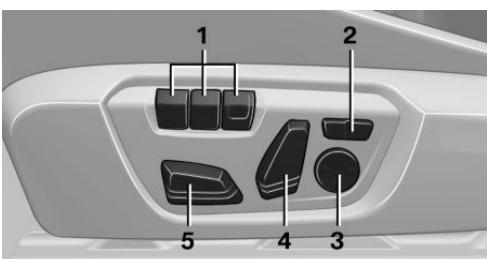
## Seat angle



Pull lever up or press lever down until the desired seat angle is reached.

## Electrically adjustable seats

### Overview

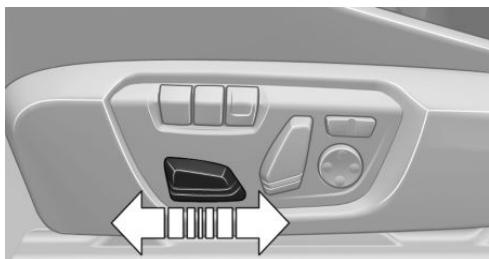


- 1 Seat and mirror memory
- 2 Backrest width
- 3 Lumbar support
- 4 Backrest angle
- 5 Forward/back, height, seat angle

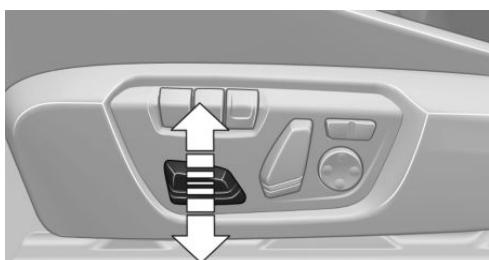
### General

The driver's seat adjustment is saved for the profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, this position is called up automatically if the function, see page 45, for this has been activated.

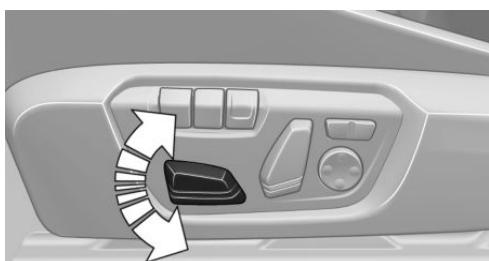
## Settings in detail



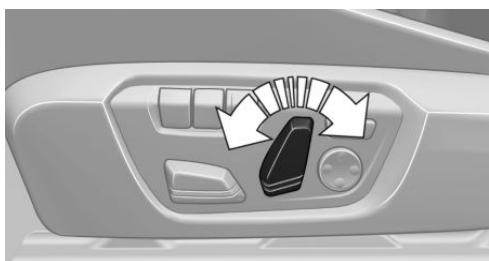
Longitudinal direction.



Height.

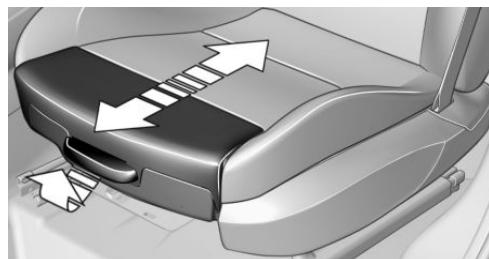


Seat angle.



Backrest angle.

## Thigh support



Pull the lever on the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

## Lumbar support

The curvature of the backrest can be changed in such a way that the lumbar region, the lordosis, is supported. The upper edge of the pelvis and the spinal column are supported to encourage an upright posture.



- ▷ Press the switch at the front/rear:  
The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the switch at the top/bottom:  
The curvature is shifted upwards/downwards.

## Backrest width



Alter the width of the backrest via the side cushions to adjust the lateral support.

## Seat heating, front

### Overview



Seat heating

### Switching on

Press the button once per temperature stage.

Maximum temperature is indicated by three LEDs.

If the journey is continued within about 15 minutes, the seat heating automatically activates with the last temperature set.

If ECO PRO, see page 194, is activated, the heating power is reduced.

### Switching off

Press and hold the button until the LEDs no longer illuminate.

## Rear seats

### Two rows of seats

#### Notes

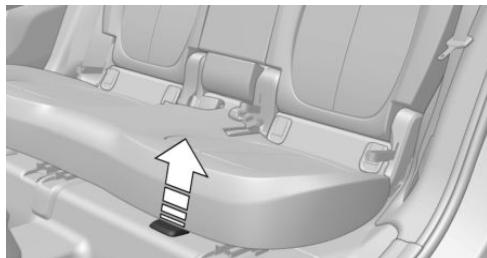
**WARNING**

Danger of trapping when folding down the centre armrest in the rear. Danger of injury. When folding down, make sure that the area of movement of the centre armrest is free.◀

**WARNING**

Seat adjustment during the journey can lead to unexpected seat movements. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only adjust the seat on the driver side when at a standstill.◀

### Forward/back



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

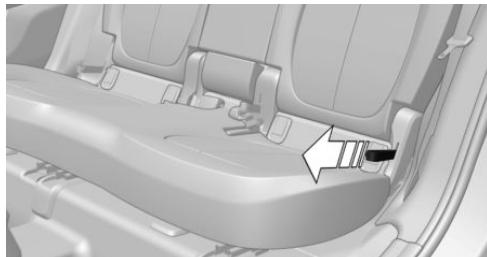
After releasing the lever, move the seat gently forward or back to make sure it engages properly.

Front/back direction can be set in ratio 60/40.

### Backrest angle

**WARNING**

The backrest can unexpectedly move during the journey due to unintentional unlocking of the rear backrests via the loops. Danger of injury. Do not attach objects to the loops for unlocking the rear backrests.◀



Pull loop and add or remove pressure on backrest as required.

## Seat belts

### Number of seat belts

For the safety of the vehicle occupants, the vehicle is equipped with five seat belts. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

Both belt buckles incorporated into the rear seat are intended for those sitting on the left and right.

The inner belt buckles of the rear seat are exclusively intended for the person sitting in the middle.

### General

Before a journey, always make sure that all occupants have fastened their seat belts.

To protect vehicle occupants, belt interlock is triggered early. When it is applied, guide the seat belt slowly from the bracket.

The airbags are a complementary safety feature and not a substitute for the seat belts.

The belt anchorage is suitable for adults of any stature as long as the seat is correctly adjusted.

### Notes

#### WARNING

Using a seat belt to restrain more than one person nullifies the protective effect of the seatbelt. Danger of injury or life. Only restrain one person with each seat belt. Do not place infants and children on your lap, but instead restrain them with the child restraint systems provided, and secure them accordingly.◀

#### WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or they can be rendered ineffective if put on incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury or life. Make sure that all vehicle occu-

pants have fastened their seat belts correctly.◀

#### WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the seat belt strap by polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The seat belt strap should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. Seat belts should not be worn with seat belt straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is illegal to carry an infant or a child on the occupant's lap.

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.◀

#### WARNING

No modifications or additions should be made by the user that will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.◀

#### WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not ensured. Danger of injury or life. Lock the wider rear backrest when using the middle seat belt.◀

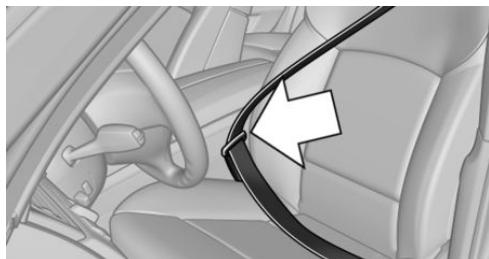
## Correct seat belt use

- ▷ Place the seat belt tightly over the pelvis and shoulder as close as possible to the body and without twisting.
- ▷ Make sure that the seat belt is positioned low at the hip in the area of the pelvis. The seat belt must not press on the midriff.
- ▷ The seat belt must not pass across the neck. It should not be pulled or jammed across sharp edges or breakable objects.
- ▷ Avoid bulky clothing.
- ▷ Regularly pull the seat belt in the upper-body area taut.

## Adjustment for automatic retracting seat belts

- ▷ Draw the buckle tongue attached to the seat belt across the body and press it into the buckle catch until a 'click' is heard.
- ▷ Adjustment of the belt length is very important. To adjust the lap belt and check whether the buckle has locked correctly, pull upwards on the shoulder strap until the lap belt fits tightly.
- ▷ The length of the diagonal shoulder strap adjusts itself automatically to allow freedom of movement.
- ▷ To release the seat belt, press the button on the buckle catch unit.

## Fastening the seat belt



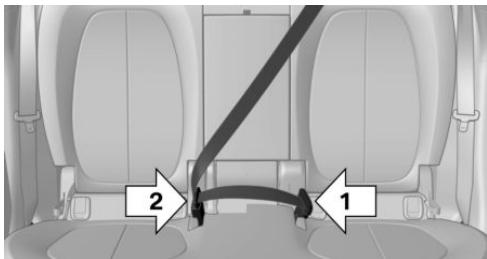
The seat belt buckle must be heard to engage.

## Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back up to the reel mechanism.

## Middle seat belt in the rear

### Fastening the seat belt

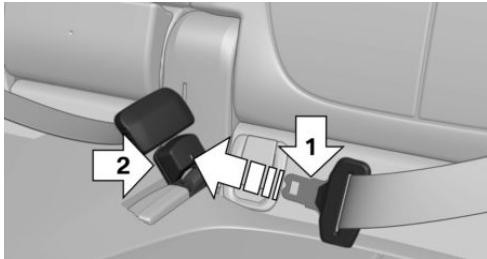


1. Pull seat belt latches out of bracket in roof.
2. Insert lower seat belt latch in belt lock, arrow 1.
3. Insert upper seat belt latch in belt lock, arrow 2.

Belt locks must engage audibly.

## Unfastening the seat belt

1. Hold the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.
3. Use seat belt latch, arrow 1, to open second seat belt latch, arrow 2.



4. Guide seat belt to bracket in roof lining.

## Seat belt reminder for driver's and front seat passenger seat



A Check Control message is displayed. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

The seat belt reminder is activated when the seat belt on the driver's side is not fastened.

On some national versions, the seat belt reminder is also activated above approximately 10 km/h, 6 mph if the front passenger's seat belt is not fastened and if heavy objects are located on the seat.

## Not for Australia/New Zealand: Seat belt reminder for rear seats



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated after the engine starts.

- ▷ Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.
- ▷ Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

The seat belt reminder will also be activated if a rear seat belt is unfastened during the journey.

## Damaged seat belts



### WARNING

The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or nullified in the following situations:

- ▷ Seat belts are damaged, contaminated or have been modified in another way.
- ▷ Belt buckle is damaged or heavily contaminated.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors have been modified.

Seat belts can be damaged in an accident without the damage necessarily being apparent. Danger of injury or life. Do not modify seat belts, belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors and belt anchor points; also, keep them

clean. After an accident, have the seat belts inspected at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

## Front head restraints

### Notes



### WARNING

Head and neck injuries can result due to the lack of protective effect if head restraints are removed or have not been adjusted correctly. Danger of injury. Before the journey, install head restraints at the occupied seats and make sure that the middle of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◀



### WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. Danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.◀

## Correctly adjusted head restraint

### General

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.

### Height

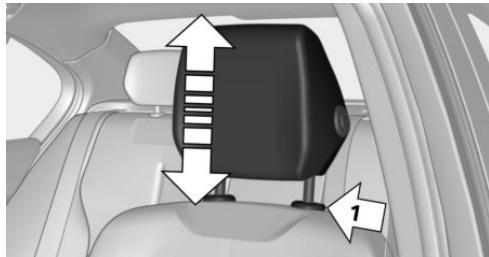
Adjust the head restraint so that its centre is approximately at the height of your eyes.

## Spacing

Adjust the spacing so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

If necessary, adjust the spacing using the incline of the seat backrest.

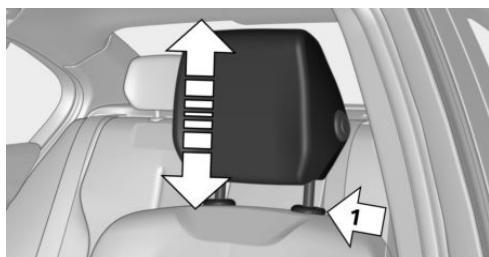
## Adjusting height



- ▷ Up: push.
- ▷ Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.

## Removing

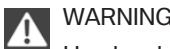
Only remove the head restraint if no-one will be sitting on the seat in question.



1. Raise head restraint until resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

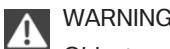
## Rear head restraints

### Notes



#### WARNING

Head and neck injuries can result due to the lack of protective effect if head restraints are removed or have not been adjusted correctly. Danger of injury. Before the journey, install head restraints at the occupied seats and make sure that the middle of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◀



#### WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. Danger of injury.

- ▷ Do not fit any covers on the seats or head restraints.
- ▷ Do not hang objects such as coat hangers directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been classified as safe for attaching to the head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for example cushions, during the journey.◀

## Correctly adjusted head restraint

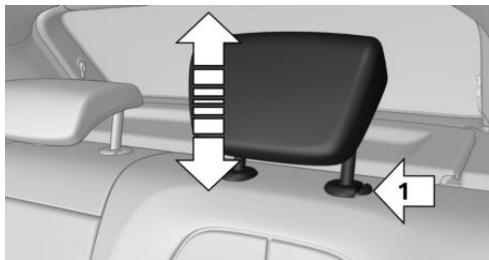
### General

Head restraints adjusted to the correct height reduce the risk of injuries to the neck in the event of an accident.

### Height

Adjust the head restraint so that its centre is approximately at the height of your eyes.

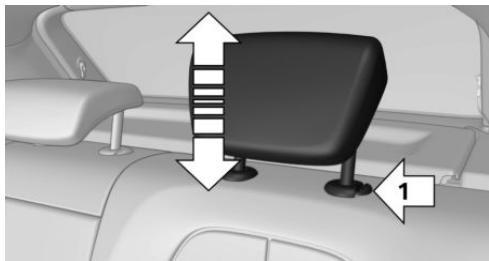
## Adjusting height



- ▷ Up: push.
- ▷ Down: press the button, arrow 1, and slide the head restraint downwards.

## Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no-one will be sitting on the seat in question.



1. Raise head restraint until resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint fully out.

## Seat and mirror memory

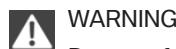
### Principle

Two different positions for driver's seat and exterior mirrors can be saved and recalled per profile. Settings for backrest width and lumbar support are not saved.

## Notes



**WARNING**  
Using the memory function during the journey can lead to unexpected seat movements. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only call up the memory function at a standstill.◀



**WARNING**  
Danger of trapping when moving the seats. Danger of injury or damage to property. Before making the setting, make sure that the movement area of the seat is clear.◀

## Overview



### Saving

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Set desired position.
3. **SET** Press the button. LED in button is illuminated.
4. Press the desired button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. LED turns off.

**SET** Button was pressed inadvertently:  
Press the button again.

LED turns off.

### Recalling

### General

There are two possibilities of calling up the memory function:

- ▷ Comfort function, see page 60.
- ▷ Safety function, see page 60.

## Convenience function

1. Open the driver's door.
2. Switch ignition off if necessary.
3. Briefly press button 1 or 2 as desired.

The relevant seat adjustment is done automatically.

The process is cancelled if a seat adjustment switch or one of the buttons is pressed.

## Safety function

1. Close the driver's door or switch the ignition on.
2. Keep button 1 or 2 pressed as desired until the adjustment procedure has been concluded.

## Calling up has been disabled

After a short time, calling up saved seat positions is disabled to prevent the battery from being discharged.

To reactivate calling up:

- ▷ Open or close a door or the tailgate.
- ▷ Press a button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the start/stop button.

## Mirrors

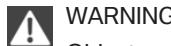
### Exterior mirrors

#### General

Depending on the equipment, the mirror setting is saved for the profile currently in use.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control, this position is called up automatically if the setting for this has been enabled.

#### Note



#### WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirrors are closer than they appear. The distance to road users behind the vehicle could be incorrectly estimated, for example when changing lane. Danger of accidents. Look over your shoulder to estimate the distance from following traffic.◀

## Overview



**1** Adjusting [60](#)

**2** Left/right, automatic parking function

**3** Folding in and out [61](#)

## Selecting a mirror



Switching to other mirror:

Push switch.

## Electrical adjustment



Corresponding to movement of button

## Saving positions

Seat and mirror position memory, see page [59](#).

## Adjusting manually

In the event of an electrical defect, for example, press the borders of the mirror glass.

## Automatic parking function

### Principle

When reverse gear is engaged, mirror glass on front passenger side is tilted downwards. This improves the view of the kerb or other obstacles near the ground, for example when parking.

### Activating

-  Push switch to driver's mirror position.
- Engage selector lever position R.

### Deactivating

Push switch to front passenger's mirror position.

### Folding in and out

#### ATTENTION

Due to the vehicle's width, it could sustain damage in car washes. Danger of damage to property. Fold in the mirrors manually or using the button prior to washing.◀

-  Press the button.

Possible up to approximately 20 km/h, approximately 15 mph.

Folding the mirrors in and out is advantageous in the following situations:

- ▷ In car washes.
- ▷ In narrow streets.
- ▷ When folding mirrors back out that have been folded in manually.

Folded-in mirrors automatically fold out at approximately 40 km/h, approximately 25 mph.

### Automatic heating

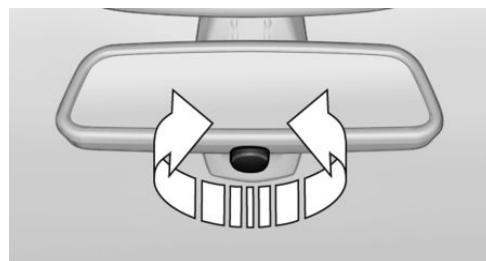
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated with the engine running.

## Automatically dimming

Both exterior mirrors are automatically dimmed. Photocells in the rear-view mirror, see page 61, are used for control.

### Rear-view mirror, manual-dim

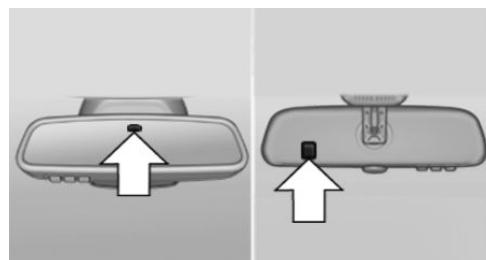
#### Turn button



To reduce glare by turning the button on the rear-view mirror.

### Rear-view mirror, automatic-dim

#### Overview



The function is controlled by photocells:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

### Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not obstruct the zone between the rear-view mirror and windscreen.

## Steering wheel

### Note

**WARNING**

Steering wheel adjustment during the journey can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. You could lose control of the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Only adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is at a standstill.◀

### Electric steering wheel lock

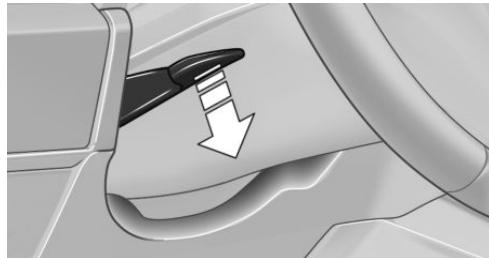
With manual gearbox: The steering wheel locks automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Switch on ignition to unlock.

**WARNING**

If steering wheel lock is activated, the vehicle cannot be steered. Danger of accidents. Switch on the ignition prior to moving the vehicle.◀

### Adjusting



1. Switch on ignition.
2. Fold the lever downwards.
3. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seated position.
4. Swing the lever back up.
5. Switch off the ignition again if necessary.

## Steering wheel heating

### Overview



Steering wheel heating

### Switching on/off



Press the button.

- ▷ On: LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: LED turns off.

# Carrying children in safety

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the se-

lected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Important considerations

### Note



### WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.

- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

## Not for Australia/New Zealand: Suitable seats

Information about which child seats can be used on the seats in question, if the child seats

are attached with a seat belt — according to ECE-R 16 standard:

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat – a, b)	Rear seats, outer – c)	Rear seat, middle
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	U	U	X
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months	U	U	X
I	9 – 18 kg	Up to 4 years	U	U	X
II	15 – 25 kg	Up to 7 years	U	U	X

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Front passenger seat – a, b)	Rear seats, outer – c)	Rear seat, middle
III	22 – 36 kg	7 years or more	U	U	X

U: suitable for child restraint systems in Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

X: not suitable for child restraint systems in Universal category that have been approved for use in this weight group.

a) Only if the front passenger airbags are deactivated.

b) Adapt the front/back position of the front passenger seat and, if possible, move it to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt.

c) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat, or remove it.

## Always carry children at the rear

### WARNING

Children less than 150 cm, 5 ft in height cannot put on the seat belt correctly without using additional restraint systems. The protective effect of the seat belts can be restricted or they can be rendered ineffective if put on incorrectly. If a seat belt is not worn correctly, additional injuries can be caused, for example in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury or life. Persons less than 150 cm, 5 ft must be secured in suitable restraint systems.◀

Accident research has shown that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 12 years old or less than 150 cm, 5 ft in height are only allowed to be transported in the rear using child restraint systems appropriate for their age, weight and stature.

## Not for Australia/New Zealand: Children on the front passenger's seat

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger's side are deactivated. Front passenger airbags can only

be deactivated with the key switch for front passenger airbags, see page 113.

### Note

### WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are triggered. Danger of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◀

### WARNING

If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the stability of the child restraint system will be restricted or rendered ineffective. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. In all relevant backrests, adapt the backrest angle if possible and set the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◀

## Fitting child restraints

### Child restraints

Appropriate child restraint systems for every age and weight class are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Before installation

Make sure backrests are engaged before fitting child restraints.

Move rear seats to rearmost position to make it easier to fit child restraint.

### Notes

When selecting, installing and using child restraint systems, comply with the information provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

#### WARNING

If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, their protective function may be restricted or rendered ineffective. A child might not be adequately restrained, for example, in the event of an accident or braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury or life. If child restraint systems and their attachment systems have been damaged or subjected to stresses in an accident, have them checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop and renewed if necessary.◀

#### WARNING

If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the stability of the child restraint system will be restricted or rendered ineffective. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. In all relevant backrests, adapt the backrest angle if possible and set the

seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◀

### For Australia/New Zealand: installation of child restraints

Please note the following warning because your vehicle has been equipped with a front airbag for the front passenger's seat that cannot be deactivated:



It is recommended not to use any kind of child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.

#### Extreme hazard

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.◀

### Not for Australia/New Zealand: On the front passenger's seat

### Deactivating airbags

#### WARNING

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system if they are triggered. Danger of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◀

Before fitting a child restraint in the front passenger's seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the passenger's side are disabled.

Deactivating the front passenger airbags with key switch, see page 113.

### Rear-facing child restraints

#### DANGER

Active front passenger airbags can fatally injure a child in a rearward-facing child restraint system if they are triggered. Danger of

injury or life. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.◀



Follow the information on the front passenger sun visor.

rearmost position and, if possible, to the highest position to achieve the best possible routing of the belt and protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located ahead of the child seat's belt guide, carefully move the front passenger's seat forwards until the best possible belt guidance is achieved.

### Backrest width

With adjustable backrest width: before fitting a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat, fully open the backrest width. Do not change the backrest width from this point on and do not call up a memory position.

## Seat position and height

Before mounting a universal child restraint system, bring the front passenger's seat to the

## ISOFIX child seat mountings

### Note

Note for Australia: ISOFIX child seats are not permitted for road use in Australia at the time of printing of this handbook. However, also since a change of the respective regulations is expected in the future, lower ISOFIX anchor-

ages are supplied in line with applicable ADRs also for Australia.

Comply with the operating and safety instructions from the manufacturer of the child restraint system when attaching and using ISOFIX child restraint systems.

## Suitable ISOFIX child restraint systems

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category – a)	Front passenger's seat – b)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	F - ISO/L1	X	IL	X
			G - ISO/L2	X	IL	X
0	Up to 10 kg	Up to 9 months	E - ISO/R1	IL	IL	X

Group	Weight of child	Approximate age	Class/category – a)	Front passenger's seat – b)	Rear seats, outer	Rear seat, middle
0+	Up to 13 kg	Up to 18 months	E - ISO/R1	IL	IL	X
			D - ISO/R2	IL	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	IL	IL	X
I	9 - 18 kg	Up to 4 years	D - ISO/R2	IL	IL	X
			C - ISO/R3	IL	IL	X
			B - ISO/F2	IL, IUF	IL, IUF	X
			B1 - ISO/F2X	IL, IUF	IL, IUF	X
			A - ISO/F3	IL, IUF	IL, IUF	X

IL: the seat is suitable for installation of an ISOFIX child restraint system in the Semi-Universal category subject to compliance with the list of vehicles accompanying the child seat.

IUF: the seat is suitable for installation of an ISOFIX child restraint system with Universal approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER strap.

X: the seat is not approved or equipped with mounting points for the ISOFIX system.

a) When using child seats on the rear seats, adapt the front/back position of the front seat if necessary, and also adjust the head restraint of the rear seat, or remove it.

b) Only if equipped with ISOFIX child seat mountings.

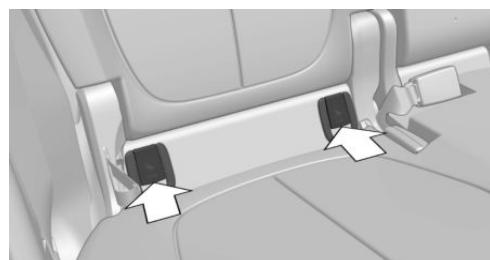
## Brackets for lower ISOFIX anchors

### Information



#### WARNING

If the ISOFIX child restraint systems are not engaged correctly, the protective effect of the ISOFIX child restraint systems may be restricted. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the lower anchor point has engaged correctly and the ISOFIX child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest.◀



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located behind the marked covers.

### Position



The corresponding symbol shows the brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchor points.



## Not for Australia/New Zealand:front passenger seat



The brackets for the lower ISOFIX anchors are located in the gap between the seat and backrest.

## Before fitting ISOFIX child restraints

Pull the seat belt out of the area of the child seat mountings.

## Fitting of ISOFIX child restraint systems

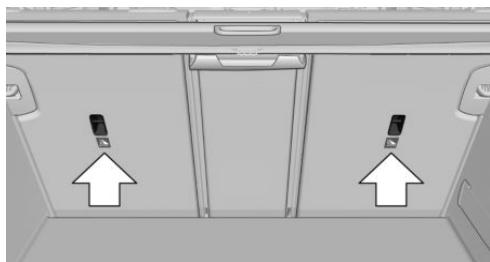
1. Install the child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Make sure that both ISOFIX anchors have snapped into place.

## Upper ISOFIX retaining strap

### Mounting points



The symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.



There are two mounting points for upper retaining strap of ISOFIX child restraint systems.

### Note

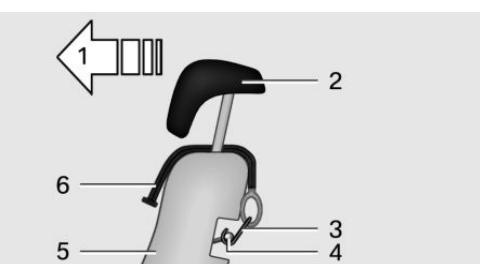
#### **ATTENTION**

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only intended for these retaining straps. The mounting points can be damaged if other objects are attached. Danger of damage to property. Only attach child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

## Guiding the retaining strap

#### **WARNING**

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. Danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed to the upper attachment strap over sharp edges, and that it is not twisted.◀

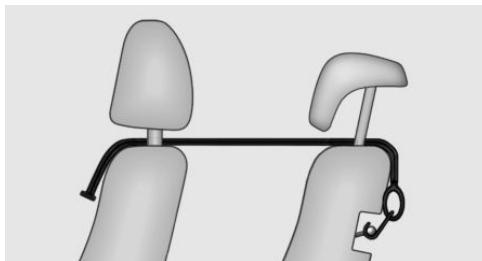


- 1 Direction of travel
- 2 Head restraint
- 3 Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4 Mounting point
- 5 Seat backrest
- 6 Upper retaining strap

## Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise head restraint if necessary.
2. On the rear seat: Guide the upper seat belt on the brackets of the head restraint.
3. Guide the holding belt between the backrest and luggage cover.

4. Engage the hook of the retaining strap in the mounting point.
5. Pull the restraining strap firmly down.
6. Push head restraint down if necessary and engage.



Not for Australia/New Zealand -

Front passenger seat: guide the upper retaining strap between the brackets of the head restraints of the front passenger seat and rear seat on the front passenger side.



#### WARNING

In the event of an accident, persons sitting in the rear can come in contact with the tensioned retaining strap of the child restraint system on the front passenger seat. Danger of injury or life. Do not transport persons on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is mounted.◀



#### WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, e.g. braking manoeuvre or accident. Danger of injury or life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀

## For Australia/New Zealand: Child restraints

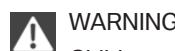
### Information

In accordance with ADR 34/01, provisions have been made to allow installation of a child restraint at each rear seating position.

The anchoring hooks which belong to the upper restraining strap of the child restraint - AS 1754, can be applied immediately to the relevant mounting.

Please refer strictly to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint system.

Each seating position is fitted with a head rest.



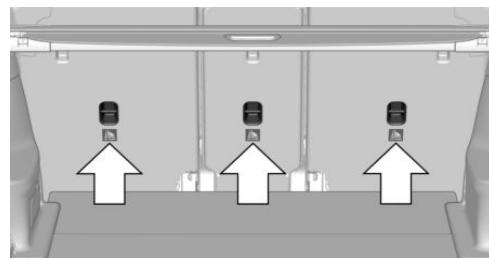
#### WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle. After using the child restraints, the anchor fittings may need to be folded down.◀

### Mounting points



The symbol shows the mounting point for the upper retaining strap.

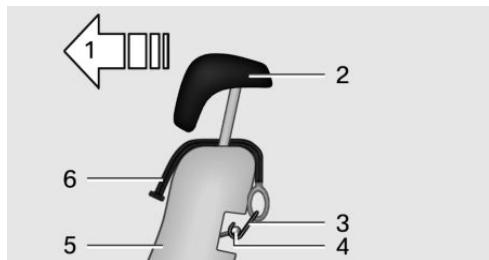
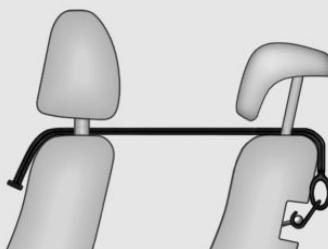


There are three mounting points for child restraint systems with an upper retaining strap.

## Guiding the retaining strap

### **WARNING**

If the upper retaining strap is used incorrectly with the child restraint system, the protective effect may be reduced. Danger of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed to the upper attachment strap over sharp edges, and that it is not twisted.◀



- 1** Direction of travel
- 2** Head restraint
- 3** Hook for the upper retaining strap
- 4** Mounting point
- 5** Seat backrest
- 6** Upper retaining strap

## Attaching the upper retaining strap to the mounting point

1. Raise head restraint if necessary.
2. On the rear seat: Guide the upper seat belt on the brackets of the head restraint.
3. Guide the holding belt between the backrest and luggage cover.
4. Engage the hook of the retaining strap in the mounting point.
5. Pull the restraining strap firmly down.
6. Push head restraint down if necessary and engage.

Not for Australia/New Zealand -

Front passenger seat: guide the upper retaining strap between the brackets of the head restraints of the front passenger seat and rear seat on the front passenger side.

### **WARNING**

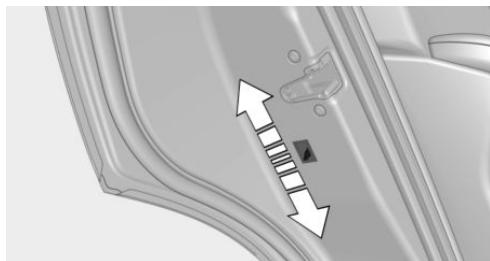
In the event of an accident, persons sitting in the rear can come in contact with the tensioned retaining strap of the child restraint system on the front passenger seat. Danger of injury or life. Do not transport persons on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is mounted.◀

### **WARNING**

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or non-existing. The rear backrest can fold forward in certain situations, e.g. braking manoeuvre or accident. Danger of injury or life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀

## Securing doors and windows in the rear

### Rear doors



Push up the locking levers on the rear doors.

The door in question can now only be opened from the outside.

### Safety switch for the rear

-  Press the button on the driver's door.  
When the safety function is switched on, the LED is illuminated.

Various functions are blocked and cannot be operated in the rear. Safety switch, see page [48](#).

# Driving

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Start/stop button

### Principle



The ignition is switched on or off and the engine is started by pressing the start/stop button.

Steptronic transmission: The engine starts if the brakes are applied when the start-stop button is pressed.

Manual gearbox: The engine starts if the clutch pedal is pressed when pressing the start/stop button.

### Ignition on

Steptronic transmission: Press the start/stop button without applying the brakes.

Manual gearbox: Press the start/stop button, do not press the clutch pedal.

All systems are operational.

Most of the indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster are illuminated for different lengths of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems.

### Ignition off

Steptronic transmission: Press the start/stop button again without applying the brakes.

Manual gearbox: Press the start/stop button again, do not press the clutch pedal.

All indicator lamps in the instrument cluster extinguish.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems.

### Notes

With the vehicle stationary and the engine shut down, the ignition is switched off automatically under the following circumstances:

- ▷ When locking, even with the low-beam headlights switched on.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged so that an engine start remains possible.
- ▷ When opening or closing the driver's door, if the driver's belt is unfastened and the low-beam headlights are switched off.
- ▷ When the driver's belt is unfastened, if the driver's door is opened and the low-beam headlights switched off.

After about 15 minutes without further operation, low-beam headlights are changed over to side lights.

### Radio ready state

Activate radio ready state: when the engine is running, press the start/stop button.

Individual electrical systems remain operational.

The radio ready state is automatically switched off in the following situations:

- ▷ After approximately eight minutes.
- ▷ When locking via the central locking system.

- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged so that an engine start remains possible.

Radio readiness remains active when ignition is switched off automatically, such as for following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening driver's seat belt.
- ▷ When low-beam headlights are automatically changed to side lights.

If engine is switched off and ignition is switched on, radio ready state will be automatically activated when door is opened if light is switched off or daytime driving lights are switched on, when corresponding equipment is fitted.

## Engine start

### Notes

#### DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless, but highly toxic. In enclosed spaces, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. Danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.

- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◀

#### ATTENTION

Repeated start attempts or starting several times in quick succession means that fuel is not combusted, or insufficiently so. The catalytic converter can overheat. Danger of damage to property. Avoid starting more than once in quick succession.◀

### Diesel engine

With the engine cold and at temperatures below 0 °C, approximately 32 °F the starting operation can be delayed slightly due to automatic preheating.

A Check Control message is shown.

### Steptronic transmission

#### Starting the engine

1. Press the brake.
2. Press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds for a certain time automatically and stops as soon as the engine is started.

### Manual gearbox

#### Starting the engine

1. Press the brake.
2. Depress the clutch and engage idle position.
3. Press the start/stop button.

Starting proceeds for a certain time automatically and stops as soon as the engine is started.

## Stopping the engine

### Notes

#### WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◀

### Before entering the car wash

So that the vehicle can roll into the vehicle wash, follow the information on washing in automatic vehicle washes, see page 243.

## Steptronic transmission

### Stopping the engine

1. With vehicle at a standstill, engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the start/stop button.  
The engine is switched off.  
The radio ready state is switched on.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Manual gearbox

### Stopping the engine

1. Press the Start/Stop button when the vehicle is at standstill.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the parking brake.

## Auto Start Stop function

### Principle

The Auto Start Stop function helps you to save fuel, by stopping the engine when stationary, for example, in a traffic jam or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. For driving off, the engine starts automatically.

### Note

After each time the engine is started using the start/stop button, the Auto Start Stop function is ready to operate.

The function is activated from 5 km/h, 3 mph to 3 mph, km/h.

Depending on selected drive mode, the system is activated or deactivated automatically.

### Stopping the engine

The engine is automatically shut down when stationary under the following conditions:

Steptronic transmission:

- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position D.

- ▷ Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill.
- ▷ Driver's seat belt buckled or driver's door closed.

To be able to release the brake pedal when the vehicle is stationary, engage the selector lever in the P position. The engine remains switched off.

Press the brake pedal to continue driving. The engine starts automatically when a gear is engaged.

Manual gearbox:

- ▷ Transmission in neutral and clutch pedal not pressed.
- ▷ Driver's seat belt buckled or driver's door closed.

The air flow rate of the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is not running.

## Displays in the instrument cluster



The display READY in the revolution counter indicates that the Auto Start Stop function is ready for automatic engine starting.



The display indicates that the preconditions for an automatic engine stop are not met.

## Restrictions of the function

The engine is not shut down automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ Outside temperature too low.
- ▷ High outside temperature and operation of the automatic air conditioning.
- ▷ Interior not heated or cooled to the desired temperature.
- ▷ Engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- ▷ Sharp steering angle or steering operation.

- ▷ After reversing.
- ▷ Condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- ▷ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▷ At high altitudes.
- ▷ Bonnet is unlocked.
- ▷ Parking assistant is activated.
- ▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
- ▷ Selector lever position in N, M/S or R.
- ▷ Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

## Engine start

For driving off, the engine automatically starts under the following conditions:

- ▷ Steptronic transmission:  
By releasing the brake pedal.
- ▷ Manual gearbox:  
Clutch pedal is depressed.

After starting the engine, accelerate as normal.

## Safety function

After an automatic shut down, the engine will not restart automatically if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- ▷ Driver's seat belt unbuckled and driver's door open.
- ▷ Bonnet has been unlocked.

Several indicator lamps illuminate for various lengths of time.

The engine can only be started using the start/stop button.

## Restrictions of the function

Even if you do not want to drive off, the engine restarts automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ Very high temperature in the interior, if the cooling function is switched on.
- ▷ The driver applies lock to the steering wheel.

- ▶ Steptronic transmission: shift from selector lever position D to N, R or M/S.
- ▶ Steptronic transmission: shift from selector lever position P to N, D, R or M/S.
- ▶ Vehicle starts to roll.
- ▶ Condensation when the automatic air conditioning is switched on.
- ▶ Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- ▶ Very low temperature in the interior, if the heating is switched on.
- ▶ Low brake vacuum, for example because the brake pedal has been depressed a number of times in succession.

## Manually deactivating/activating the system

### Using the button



Press the button.

- ▶ LED illuminates: Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.

During an automatic engine stop, the engine is started.

The engine can be started or stopped only by means of the start/stop button.

- ▶ LED goes out: Auto Start Stop function is activated.

### Parking the vehicle during automatic engine stop

With automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example in order to leave it.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Engage selector lever in position P
2. Press the start/stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Manual gearbox:

1. Press the start/stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start Stop function is deactivated.
2. Engage first gear or reverse.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Start engine as usual, using the start/stop button.

### Automatic deactivation

In certain situations the Auto Start Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety's sake, for example if the absence of the driver is detected.

### Malfunction

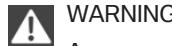
The Auto Start Stop function no longer shuts down the engine automatically. A Check Control message is shown. It is possible to keep driving. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Parking brake

### Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling when it is parked.

### Notes



#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◀



### WARNING

Unsupervised children or animals in the vehicle can set the vehicle in motion and endanger themselves or other road users, for example by the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the start/stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing doors or windows.
- ▷ Engage selector lever position N.
- ▷ Operating vehicle equipment.

Risk of accident or injury. Do not leave children or animals unsupervised in the vehicle. When leaving the vehicle, take the remote control with you and lock the vehicle.◀

## Overview



Parking brake

## Engaging



Pull switch.

LED is illuminated.



The indicator lamp illuminates red. The parking brake is engaged.

Depending on the parking situation, the parking brake is automatically engaged.

Steptronic transmission: in some parking situations, engaging selector lever position P automatically applies the parking brake. In these cases, the parking brake is automatically disengaged when exiting from selector lever position P.

## During the journey

Use during the journey serves as an emergency brake:

Pull and hold the switch. Vehicle brakes strongly for as long as the switch is pulled.



The indicator lamp illuminates red, a signal sounds and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is shown.

If the vehicle is braked to approximately 3 km/h, 2 mph, the parking brake is engaged.

## Releasing

With the ignition switched on:



Manual transmission: press button with the brake depressed.

Steptronic transmission: Press the switch with the brake pressed or selector lever position P engaged.

LED and indicator light turn off.

Parking brake is released.

## Automatic release with Steptronic transmission

Operate the accelerator pedal to automatically release.

LED and indicator light turn off.

Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically released by operating the accelerator pedal.

- ▶ Engine on.
- ▶ Drive position engaged.
- ▶ Driver belted in and door closed.

## Automatic release with manual gearbox

Start as usual. The parking brake is released when the clutch pedal is released.

LED and indicator light turn off.

Under the following preconditions, the parking brake is triggered automatically:

- ▶ Engine on.
- ▶ Gear engaged.
- ▶ Driver belted in and door closed.
- ▶ Engine force is sufficient to start off.

## Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle against rolling away, for example with a chock, if you leave the vehicle.

## After a power failure

### Initial operation

1. Switch on ignition.
2.  Press the switch with the brake depressed or selector lever position P engaged.

It can take a few seconds to put the brake into operation. Any sounds that occur are normal.

 The indicator light in the instrument cluster extinguishes when the parking brake is operational again.

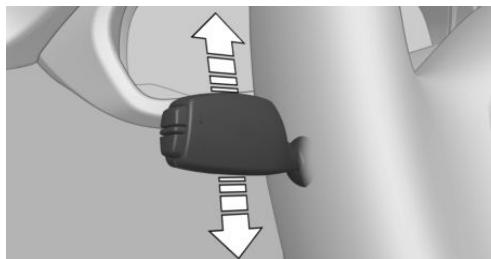
## Turn indicators, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

### Turn indicator

#### Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Do not fold in the exterior mirrors while driving or while operating the turn indicators or hazard warning lights to ensure that the turn indicators in the exterior mirrors are well recognisable.

### Indicating



Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

The turn indicator lever returns to its initial position after activation.

To cancel the signal manually, press the lever softly as far as the resistance point.

### Triple turn signal

Touch the lever softly.

The turn indicator flashes three times.

This function can be enabled or disabled.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "1-touch triple turn signal"

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

## Indicating a turn briefly

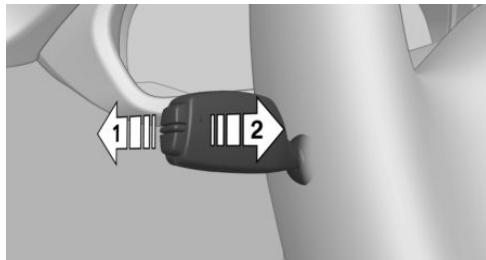
Press the lever as far as the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you wish to indicate a turn.

## Malfunction

If the indicator light flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn signal light has failed.

During trailer towing, the light might also indicate failure of one of the turn signal lights of the trailer.

## High-beam headlights, headlight flasher



- ▷ High-beam headlights, arrow 1.
- ▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

## Wiper system

### Switching the wipers on/off and flick-wiping

#### General

Do not use wipers with a dry windscreens, otherwise the wiper blades will wear or become damaged more quickly.

#### Notes



#### WARNING

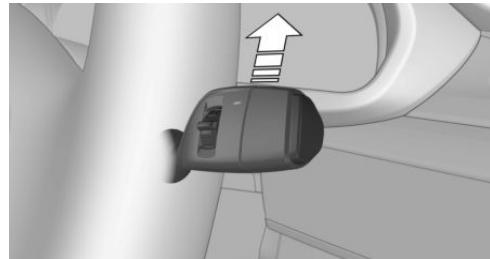
If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreens, this can trap body parts or damage parts of the vehicle.

Danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreens, and that the windscreen wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.◀

#### ATTENTION

If the wipers have frozen on, switching on can cause the wiper blades to tear and the wiper motor to overheat. Danger of damage to property. Defrost the windscreens before switching on the wipers.◀

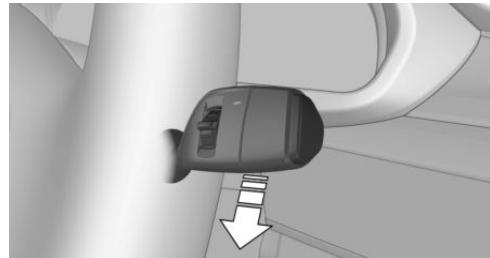
### Switching on



The lever returns to the basic position when released.

- ▷ Normal wiping speed: press upwards once. When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to intermittent operation.
- ▷ Rapid wiping speed: press upwards twice or press once beyond the resistance point. When the vehicle is at a standstill, the wipers switch to normal speed.

### Switching off and flick-wiping



The lever returns to the basic position when released.

- ▶ Flick-wiping: press downwards once.
- ▶ Switching off normal wiping speed: press downwards once.
- ▶ Switching off fast wiping speed: press downwards twice.

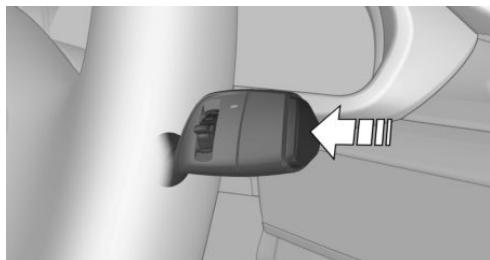
## Intermittent mode or rain sensor

### Principle

Without rain sensor, the interval for the wiper operation is specified.

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the rain intensity. The sensor is mounted on the windscreen, directly in front of the rear-view mirror.

### Activating/deactivating



Press the button on the wiper lever.

Wiping is started. If a rain sensor is fitted: LED in wiper lever illuminates.

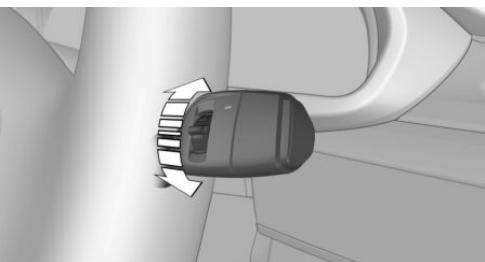
If there is frost, no wiping process is started.



#### ATTENTION

In car washes, the wipers may inadvertently start moving if the rain sensor is activated. Danger of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.◀

### Setting the interval time or sensitivity of the rain sensor

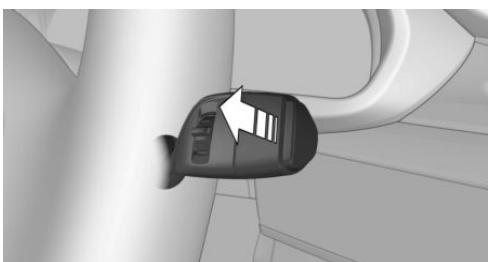


Turn the knurled wheel to set the interval time or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

### Cleaning the window glass



Pull the wiper lever.

Fluid from the washer fluid reservoir is sprayed onto the windscreens and the wipers are operated briefly.



#### WARNING

At low temperatures, the washer fluid can freeze onto the windscreens and restrict visibility. Danger of accidents. Only use the washer systems if there is no possibility of the washer fluid freezing. Use anti-freeze if required.◀



## ATTENTION

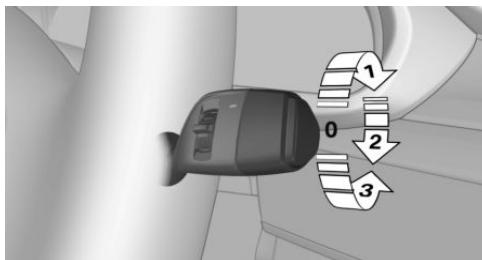
If the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot operate as intended. Danger of damage to property. Do not use the washer system with the washer fluid reservoir empty.◀

## Windscreen washer jets

Windscreen washer jets are automatically heated when the ignition is switched on.

## Rear window wiper

### Switching on rear window wiper



Turn up switch from rest 0, arrow 1: intermittent mode. Engaging reverse gear activates continuous operation.

### Cleaning rear window

In intermittent mode: turn the switch further, arrow 2. The switch returns to the intermittent position when released.

At rest: turn switch down, arrow 3. The switch returns to the rest position when released.

### Fold-out position of the wipers

This is important, for example for replacing the wiper blades or folding them out in the event of frost.



## WARNING

If the wipers start moving when they are folded away from the windscreen, this can trap body parts or damage parts of the vehicle. Danger of injury or damage to property. Make

sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are folded away from the windscreen, and that the windscreen wipers are in contact with the windscreen when switching on.◀

1. Switch ignition on and back off again.
2. If there is a risk of frost, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen.
3. Press the wiper lever upwards beyond the resistance point and hold it there for approximately three seconds until the wipers come to a standstill in a nearly vertical position.

After folding the wipers in, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press the wiper lever downwards. The wipers move back to the rest position and are operational once again.

## Washer fluid

### General

All washer jets are supplied from one tank.

Before filling, make up a mixture of tap water, screenwash concentrate and if necessary add anti-freeze.

Recommended minimum fill level: 1 litre, approximately 1.7 Imp. pints.

### Notes



## WARNING

Some anti-freezes can contain toxic substances, and are flammable. Risk of fire and fatal injury. Comply with the notes on the containers. Keep anti-freezes away from sources of combustion. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◀

**WARNING**

Washer fluid can ignite on contact with hot parts of the engine, and catch fire. Danger of injury or damage to property. Only top up washer fluid when the engine has cooled down. Then fully close the cap of the washer fluid reservoir.◀

**ATTENTION**

Additives containing silicone added to the washer fluid for their water beading effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washer system. Danger of damage to property. Do not add any additives containing silicone to the washer fluid.◀

**ATTENTION**

Use of undiluted and different types of screenwash concentrates or anti-freeze can lead to damage to the washer system. Danger of damage to property. Dilute screenwash concentrates or anti-freeze before filling. Comply with the instructions and mixing ratios stated on the containers. Do not mix together screenwash concentrates from different manufacturers.◀

**Overview**

The reservoir for the washer fluid is located in the engine compartment.

**Manual gearbox****Notes****ATTENTION**

When shifting into a lower gear, high engine speeds can damage the engine. Danger of damage to property. Push the shift lever to the right while shifting into the 5th or 6th gear.◀

**WARNING**

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◀

**Shifting gears****General**

For a harmonious and dynamic gear change, the engine speed is automatically adjusted during a gearshift.

**Reverse gear**

Engage this position only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance of the selector lever move in a dynamic movement towards the left and engage the reverse gear.

# Steptronic transmission

## Note

### **WARNING**

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▷ Apply the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◀

down beyond the regular full-throttle position; resistance will be felt.

## Engaging selector lever positions

Apply the brake until you are ready to drive off; this will prevent the vehicle from moving when a gear is selected.

The selector lever can only be taken out of the selector lever position P with the ignition switched on or the engine running.

Before shifting from selector lever position P or N when the vehicle is stationary, first press the brake, otherwise the shift lock will not be deactivated and the desired gearshift will not be performed.

A lock prevents inadvertently shifting to selector lever position P or R and inadvertently shifting from selector lever position P.

## Selector lever positions

### D Drive

Selector lever position for all normal driving. All gears for forward driving are selected automatically.

### R Reverse

Engage this position only when the vehicle is stationary.

### N Neutral

The vehicle will be able to roll. Select this in a car wash, for example.

### P Park

Engage this position only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive gears are locked.

Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that the selector lever is engaged in the P position. The vehicle could otherwise start to move.

### Kick-down

Kick-down enables you to achieve maximum performance. Press the accelerator pedal



Press unlock button on front of selector lever, arrow.

## Sport program and manual operation

### Activating the sport program



Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.

The gear selected appears on the instrument cluster, for example S1.

The sport program of the gearbox is activated.

### Activating M/S manual operation

1. Press the selector lever out of selector lever position D to the left.
2. Press the selector lever forwards or pull it backwards.

Manual operation M/S becomes active and the gear is shifted.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, for example M1.

If required by the situation, the Steptronic transmission continues shifting automatically.

Example: if certain engine speed limits are reached, it is automatically upshifted as needed in manual operation M/S.

### Switching to manual operation

- ▶ To shift down: press the selector lever forwards.
- ▶ To shift up: pull the selector lever backwards.

Gear changes are only done with the suitable engine and travel speed, for example, there is no change down with too high an engine speed.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, followed by the gear actually in use.

### Steptronic Sport transmission: avoid automatic upshift in manual operation M/S

The Steptronic Sport transmission does not automatically switch up in manual operation M/S when certain engine speed limits are reached, if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▶ DSC deactivated.
- ▶ TRACTION activated.

Beyond that, it is not shifted down in the case of kick-down.

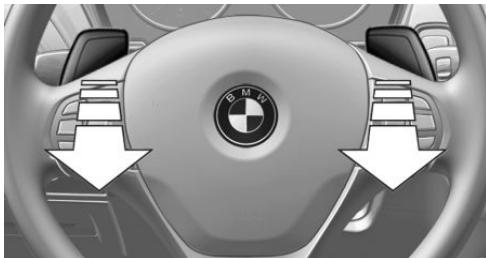
In the corresponding gearbox version, operating the kick-down and the left shift paddle at the same time allows you to change down to the lowest possible gear. This is not possible in a brief change from selector lever position D to manual operation M/S using the shift paddles.

### Switching off the sport program/manual operation

Press the selector lever to the right.

D is shown in the instrument cluster.

### Shift paddles



Shift paddles on steering wheel enable fast gearshifting without taking hands off steering wheel.

- ▶ Change up: pull right shift paddle briefly.

- ▷ Change down: pull left shift paddle briefly.
- ▷ By slowly pulling the left shift paddle, you can shift down to the lowest possible gear.

Gear changes are only done with the suitable engine and travel speed, for example, there is no change down with too high an engine speed.

The gear selected appears briefly on the instrument cluster, followed by the gear currently in use.

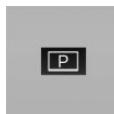
If you switch gear with the shift paddles on steering wheel whilst in automatic mode, the vehicle switches to manual operation briefly.

System reverts to automatic operation from manual operation after a certain period of time of moderate driving, without acceleration or gearshifts using shift paddles.

Changing to automatic operation is possible:

- ▷ Give right shift paddle a long pull.  
or
- ▷ In addition to briefly pulling right shift paddle, briefly pull left shift paddle.

## Displays in the instrument cluster



The selector lever position is displayed, for example: P.

## Unlocking the transmission lockout manually

If the selector lever is blocked in selector lever position P in spite of the ignition being switched on, the brake depressed and unlock button pressed, the drive position block can be lifted manually:

Before transmission lockout is released manually, apply parking brake to prevent vehicle from rolling away.

1. Release the sleeve from selector lever at the bottom from the centre console.



2. Lift the sleeve. Remove the cable plug connector as appropriate.
3. With the screwdriver from the on-board tool kit, see page 224, push the yellow release lever down, arrow.



4. Move the selector lever back slightly, by pressing on the unlock button on the front of the selector lever.  
Release the release lever.
5. Put the selector lever in the desired position.

## Steptronic sport transmission: Launch Control

### Principle

Launch Control allows optimised acceleration when driving off on a non-slip road surface.

## General

Using Launch Control leads to preliminary component wear, as this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control when running in, see page 182.

To support the driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

## Requirements

Launch Control is available with an engine at operating temperature, so after an uninterrupted drive of at least 10 km, approximately 6 miles.

To start with Launch Control, do not engage the steering wheel.

## Starting with Launch Control

With the engine running:

1.  Press button and select SPORT with drive experience switch.  
TRACTION is displayed in instrument cluster in combination with SPORT and DSC OFF indicator lamp is illuminated.
2. Engage selector lever position S.
3. Depress the brake forcefully with your foot.
4. Press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance at the full-throttle position and hold, kick-down.  
A flag symbol is shown in the instrument cluster.
5. The engine speed when driving off is regulated. Release the brake within 3 seconds.

Before using Launch Control again, allow the transmission to cool down for about 5 minutes.

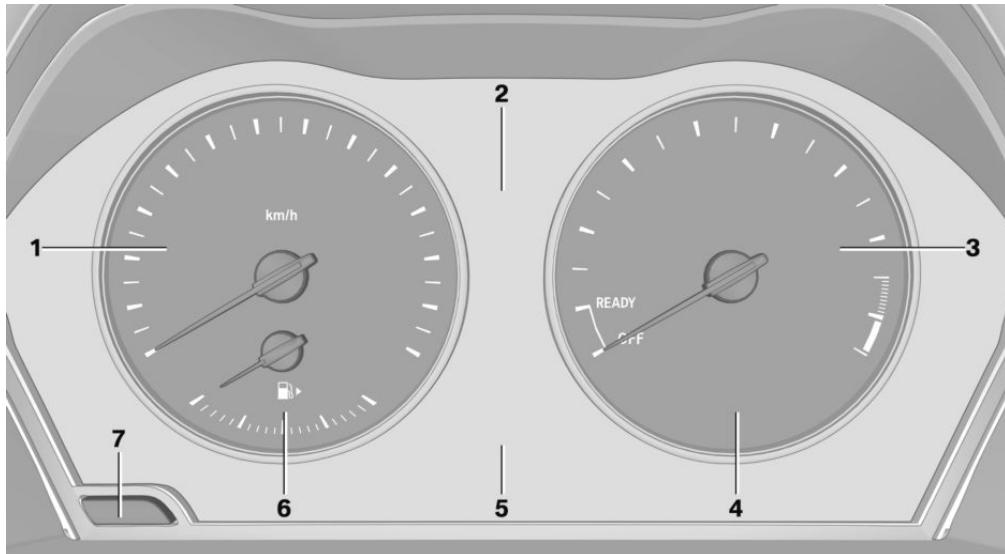
# Displays

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the se-

lected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Overview, Instrument cluster



**1** Speedometer

**2** Messages, for example, Check Control

**3** Revolution counter

**4** Current fuel consumption

**5** Electronic displays

**6** Fuel gauge

**7** Reset kilometres

## Electronic displays

- ▷ Selection lists, see page 97.
- ▷ Outside temperature, see page 92.
- ▷ Auto Start Stop function, see page 75.
- ▷ On-board computer, see page 98.
- ▷ Date, see page 92.
- ▷ Energy recuperation, see page 93.
- ▷ Gear Indicator, see page 85.

- ▶ Seat belt reminder for rear seats, see page 57.
- ▶ Kilometres/trip odometer, see page 92.
- ▶ Messages, for example check control, see page 88.
- ▶ Navigation display.
- ▶ Range, see page 93.
- ▶ Status, drive experience switch, see page 135.
- ▶ Service requirements, see page 93.
- ▶ Speed Limit Information, see page 95.
- ▶ Time, see page 92.

## Check Control

### Principle

The Check Control monitors vehicle functions and alerts you to any faults in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and the Head-Up Display.

If applicable, the text message shown in the Control Display is accompanied by an additional acoustic sound.

### Indicator and warning lamps

#### General

Indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colours.

When the engine starts or the ignition is switched on, the functionality of some lights is briefly checked.

### Red lights

#### Seat belt reminder



Seat belt is not fastened on the driver's side. For some country versions: front passenger's seat belt is not fastened or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Flashing or illuminating: seat belt on the driver's or front passenger side is not fastened. The seat belt reminder can also be triggered if there are objects in the front passenger seat. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

#### Not for Australia/New Zealand: Belt reminder for rear seats



Red: seat belt not fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

Green: seat belt fastened on the corresponding rear seat.

### Airbag system



Airbag system and belt tensioner may be faulty.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Parking brake



The parking brake is engaged.

For further information see release parking brake, see page 77.

### Brake system



Brake system malfunctioning. Continue driving at moderate speed.

Immediately have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or an-

other qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Front-end collision warning



Illuminating: forewarning, for example if a danger of collision is anticipated or there is a very short distance to a vehicle ahead.

Increase distance.

Flashing: acute warning in the event of an immediate collision if the vehicle approaches another vehicle with relatively high differential speed.

Engage by braking and swerving as required.

### Person warning



Symbol in the instrument cluster.

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person, the symbol illuminates and a signal sounds.

### Orange lights

#### Active Cruise Control



The number of transverse bars shows the selected distance to the vehicle in front.

For further information, see Camera-based Cruise Control with stop & go function, ACC, see page 137.

#### Vehicle recognition, Active Cruise Control



Illuminating: preceding vehicle detected.

Flashing: the requirements for operation of the system are no longer being met.

The system was deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or the accelerator pedal.

### Yellow lights

#### Anti-lock Brake System, ABS



Avoid abrupt braking if possible. Braking force reinforcement faulty. Consider longer braking distance. Immediately have a check performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

#### Dynamic Stability Control DSC



Flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilised. Decrease speed and adjust driving style to the road conditions.

Illuminating: DSC has failed. Have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information see Dynamic Stability Control DSC, see page 132.

#### Dynamic Stability Control DSC deactivated, or Dynamic Traction Control DTC activated



Dynamic Stability Control DSC, is switched off or Dynamic Traction Control DTC is switched on.

For further information see Dynamic Stability Control DSC, see page 132, and Dynamic Traction Control DTC, see page 133.

#### Runflat indicator RPA



The runflat indicator reports a loss of tyre pressure in a tyre.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.

For more information, see Runflat indicator RPA, see page 118.

## Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

 Illuminating: the Tyre Pressure Monitor reports a loss of tyre pressure in a tyre.

Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.

Flashing and then illuminating continuously: no flat tyres or loss of tyre pressure can be detected.

- Fault due to systems or devices with the same frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.
- TPM could not shut down the reset: execute a reset of the system again.
- Wheel without TPM electronics is fitted: have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if necessary.
- Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For more information, see Tyre Pressure Monitor, see page 115.

## Steering system



Steering system faulty.

Have the steering system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Engine functions



Have the vehicle checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

For further information see socket for on-board diagnosis, see page 223.

## Lane departure warning



System is switched on and warns you under certain conditions if you leave a detected lane without indicating first.

For further information see Lane Departure Warning, see page 127.

## Manual speed limiter



Illuminating: the system is switched on.

Flashing: set speed limit exceeded. An acoustic signal may sound.

Reduce speed or deactivate system.

## Rear fog lights



Rear fog lights are switched on.

For further information see rear fog lights, see page 109.

## Green lights

### Turn indicator



Turn indicator is switched on.

If the indicator lamp flashes more rapidly than usual, a turn signal light has failed.

For further information see turn indicator, see page 78.

## Side lights, driving lights



Side lights or driving lights are switched on.

For further information see side lights/low-beam headlights, driving lights control, see page 105.

## Front fog lights



Front fog lights are switched on.

For further information see front fog lights, see page 109.

## High-beam assistance



High-beam assistance is switched on. High-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

For further information see high-beam assistance, see page [108](#).

## Cruise Control



The system is switched on. The speed set using the control functions on the steering wheel is maintained.

## Blue lights

### High-beam headlights



High-beam headlights are switched on.

For further information see high-beam headlights, see page [79](#).

## General lights

### Check Control



At least one Check Control message is displayed or saved.

### Text messages

Text messages and symbols in the instrument cluster explain the meaning of a check control message and the indicator and warning lights.

### Supplementary text messages

You can call up additional information, for example the cause of the fault and any action required, via Check Control.

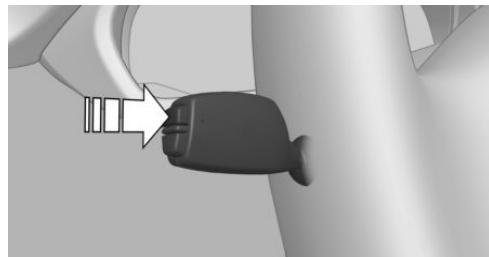
The supplementary text is automatically shown in the Control Display for urgent messages.

## Symbols

Inside the extended text message, depending on the Check Control message, the following functions can be selected.

- ▷ Display additional information on the Check Control message in the integrated Owner's Handbook.
- ▷ "Service request" Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- ▷ "Mobile Care" Contact the Mobile Service Centre.

### Hiding Check Control messages



Press the button on turn indicator lever.

- ▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed permanently and remain until the fault has been repaired. If there are a number of malfunctions simultaneously, the messages are displayed in succession. These messages can be hidden for approximately eight seconds. They are then displayed again automatically.
- ▷ Other Check Control messages are automatically hidden after approximately 20 seconds. They remain saved and can be displayed again.

## Displaying Check Control messages saved in memory

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Check Control"
4. Select a text message.

## Messages displayed at the end of a journey

Certain messages displayed when driving are displayed again when the ignition is switched off.

## Fuel gauge



The vehicle inclination can lead to fluctuations in the display.

Depending on the equipment, the arrow next to the petrol pump symbol shows on which side of the vehicle the petrol tank flap is.

Notes on refuelling, see page 202.

## Revolution counter

It is vital to avoid engine speeds in the red warning zone. In this zone, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

## Odometer and trip distance recorder

### Display



- ▷ Odometer, arrow 1.
- ▷ Trip distance recorder, arrow 2.

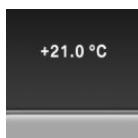
## Show/reset distance



Press the button.

- ▷ When the ignition is off, the time, outside temperature and odometer are displayed.
- ▷ When the ignition is on, the trip distance recorder is reset.

## Outside temperature



If the display drops to +3 °C/+37 °F or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

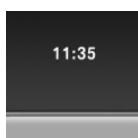
There is an increased risk of black ice.



### WARNING

Even at temperatures above +3 °C/+37 °F, there can be an increased danger of icy roads, for example on bridges or on shaded roads. Danger of accidents. At low temperatures, adjust the driving style to the weather conditions.◀

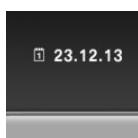
## Time



The time is shown in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time on the Control Display, see page 101.

## Date

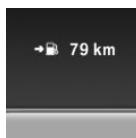


The date is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Setting the date on the Control Display, see page 101.

## Range

### Display



If there is a small remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is briefly displayed.
- ▷ The on-board computer shows the remaining range.
- ▷ With dynamic driving style, for example fast cornering, the engine function is not always ensured.

If the range drops below approximately 50 km, approximately 30 miles the Check Control message is continually displayed.



#### ATTENTION

If the range drops below 50 km, approximately 30 miles the engine could not be supplied anymore with sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. Danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time.◀

## Current fuel consumption

### Instrument cluster



Shows the momentary fuel consumption. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

### Instrument cluster with extended scope



Shows the momentary fuel consumption. It is possible to check the economy and environmental compatibility of your driving style.

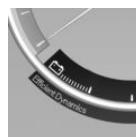
## Displaying the current fuel consumption

Depending on equipment, the current fuel consumption can be shown as a bar display in the instrument cluster.

1. "Settings"
2. "Instr. cluster display"
3. "Analogue add. displays"

## Energy recuperation

### Display



In the Coasting mode, the kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted into electrical energy. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be lowered.

## Service requirements

### Principle

The distance to be driven or time to the next maintenance is displayed briefly after switching on the ignition briefly in the instrument cluster.

The current service requirements can be read by a service advisor from the remote control.

### Display

#### Detailed information on service requirements

More detailed information on the scope of maintenance can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service requirements"

Essential maintenance routines and any statutory inspections required are displayed.

- Select an entry to display more detailed information.

## Symbols

Sym- bols	Description
	No servicing is currently needed.
	Maintenance or an inspection required by law is due soon.
	Servicing is overdue.

## Entering deadlines

Enter deadlines for prescribed statutory inspections.

Ensure that the date and time of the vehicle are set correctly.

On the Control Display:

- "Vehicle information"
- "Vehicle status"
- "Service requirements"
- "§ vehicle inspection"
- "Date:"
- Adjust the settings.
- Confirm.

The date input is saved.

## Automatic Service notification

Data on the service status or on statutory inspections for the vehicle are transmitted to the Service partner automatically when a service or inspection is imminent.

It can be checked when the Service partner was notified.

On the Control Display:

- "Vehicle information"
- "Vehicle status"
- Call up "Options".
- "Last Teleservice Call"

## Service history

### General

Have maintenance work performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. Performed maintenance work is recorded in the vehicle data, see page 222.

The maintenance visits entered can be shown on the Control Display. Operation is available as soon as a maintenance visit has been entered in the vehicle data.

## Displaying service history

On the Control Display:

- "Vehicle information"
  - "Vehicle status"
  - "Service requirements"
  - "Service history"
- Maintenance visits carried out are shown.
- Select an entry to display more detailed information.

## Symbols

Sym- bols	Description
	Green: maintenance has been carried out on time.
	Yellow: maintenance has been carried out with a delay.
	Maintenance has not been carried out.

## Shift point indicator

### Principle

The system recommends the most efficient gear for the current driving situation.

### General

The shift point indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and manual gearbox depending on equipment and country version.

Information on up or downshifting are displayed on the instrument cluster.

For vehicles without shift point indicator, the gear engaged is shown.

### Manual gearbox: displays

Symbol	Description
	Most efficient gear is engaged.
	Shift up into most efficient gear.
	Shift down into most efficient gear.
	Shift to neutral.

### Steptronic transmission: displays

Example	Description
	Most efficient gear is engaged.
	Shift to a more efficient gear.

## Speed Limit Information with No Passing Information

### Principle

#### Speed Limit Information

The currently detected speed limit is displayed by Speed Limit Information using a symbol in the shape of a traffic sign in the instrument cluster. The camera in the area of the interior rear-view mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with additional symbols, for example, when wet, are also compared with data internal to the vehicle, for example the rain sensor, and displayed, depending on the situation.

With navigation system, the system considers the information saved in the navigation data and also displays the speed limits present on unmarked sections of road.

Without navigation system, the system has certain technical limitations. Speed limits with textual supplementary signs are always shown.

#### No Passing Information

No Passing Information displays with corresponding symbols in the instrument cluster no passing restrictions and their removal detected by the camera. The system only considers no passing restrictions and lifting the restriction made known by signage.

Nothing will be displayed in the following situations:

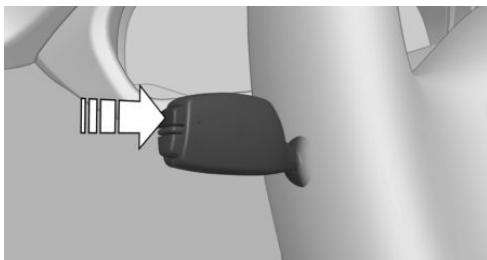
- ▷ In countries in which no passing is primarily shown by road markings.
- ▷ On routes without signage.
- ▷ On level crossings, carriageway markings or other situations which would not indicate an unsigned no passing restriction.

## Notes

Speed limits and no overtaking for towing a trailer are not shown.

### WARNING

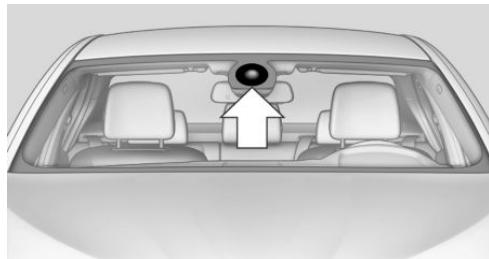
The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the visibility conditions and traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



Press the button on turn indicator lever several times if necessary.

## Overview

### Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

### Display

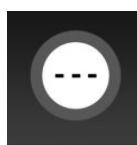
Speed Limit Information is displayed on the on-board computer.

### Speed Limit Information



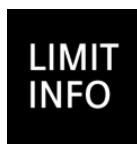
Last detected speed limit.

Without navigation system the traffic sign is greyed out when cornering or on longer sections of road.



With navigation system:

Speed Limit Information unavailable.



Without navigation system:

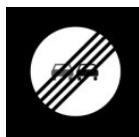
No speed limit or end of restriction detected.

The Speed Limit Information can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display.

### No Passing Information



No passing restriction.



End of no passing restriction.

The No Passing Information can also be shown in the Head-Up Display.

## System limits

The function may be disabled or inaccurate under certain conditions, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog and heavy rain or snow.
- ▷ If road signs are obscured.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ With bright oncoming light.
- ▷ When the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.
- ▷ Due to possible wrong detections of the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits saved in the navigation system are wrong.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ If there are deviations in relation to the navigation, for example due to changes in the road routing.
- ▷ On overtaking buses or trucks with speed stickers.
- ▷ If traffic signs do not correspond to the standard.
- ▷ During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.

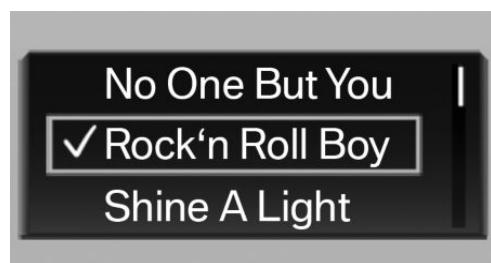
## Selection lists in the instrument cluster

### Principle

Depending on equipment, the following can be displayed or operated via the buttons and the knurled wheel on the steering wheel and using the displays in the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display:

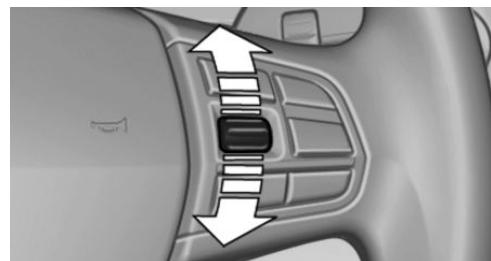
- ▷ Current audio source.
- ▷ Redialing for telephone.
- ▷ Activating the voice control system.

### Display



Depending on equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from what is displayed.

### Activating the list and entering a setting



Turn the knurled wheel on the right-hand side of the steering wheel to activate the corresponding list.

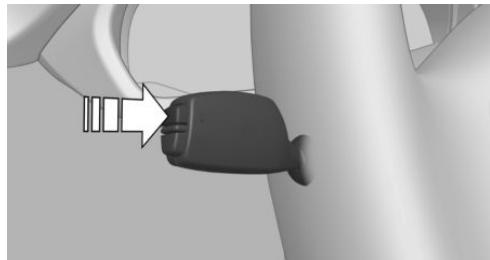
Use the knurled wheel, select the desired setting and confirm by pressing the knurled wheel.

With activated route guidance in the navigation system.

- ▷ ECO PRO bonus range.

## On-board computer

### Calling up information on the information display

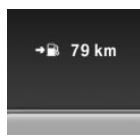


Press the button on turn indicator lever.

Information is displayed on the information display in the instrument cluster.

### Overview of the information

#### Info display



Repeated pressing of the button on the turn indicator lever shows the following information on the information display:

- ▷ Range.

- ▷ Average consumption, fuel.
- ▷ Momentary consumption, fuel.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Engine temperature display.
- ▷ Speed Limit Information.
- ▷ Time of arrival.

With activated route guidance in the navigation system.

- ▷ Distance to destination.

### Selecting information

Depending on the equipment, it can be set which information of the on-board computer can be called up on the information display in the instrument cluster.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instr. cluster display"
3. Select required information.

### Detailed information

#### Range

Displays the estimated range available with the remaining fuel.

It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 30 km, 20 miles.

#### Average fuel consumption

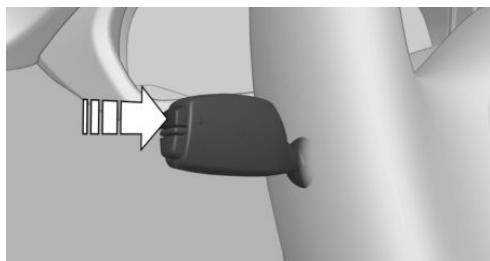
The average consumption is calculated for the period during which the engine is running.

The average consumption is calculated on the route travelled since the on-board computer was last reset.

#### Average speed

The calculation of average speed ignores any stationary periods where the engine was switched off manually.

## Resetting average values



Keep the button pressed on the turn indicator lever.

## Engine temperature display

Displays current engine temperature from a combination of coolant and engine oil temperature. Display is in middle position as soon as optimum operating temperature has been reached.

If the engine oil or coolant and therefore the engine become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed as well.

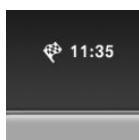
Check coolant level, see page [220](#).

## Distance to destination

The remaining distance to the destination is displayed if a destination was entered in the navigation system before the start of the journey.

The distance to the destination is automatically adopted.

## Arrival time



The estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination was entered in the navigation system before the start of the journey.

A precondition is that the time is correctly set.

## Speed Limit Information

The Speed Limit Information is preset. Description of Speed Limit Information, see page [95](#).

## Journey computer

Two types of on-board computer are available.

- ▶ "On-board computer": values can be reset any number of times.
- ▶ "Trip computer": values deliver an overview of the current trip.

## Resetting the Journey computer

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset": all values are reset.

"Reset automatically": all values are reset if the vehicle is at a standstill for approximately four hours.

## Display on the Control Display

Display the on-board computer or Journey computer on the Control Display.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "On-board computer" or "Trip computer"

## Resetting fuel consumption and speed

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "On-board computer"
3. "Consumpt." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

## Sport displays

### Principle

On the Control Display, sports instruments can be shown and the drive state is checked before using the SPORT program.

### Sports instruments

Values for performance and torque are shown on the control display.

### Show sports instruments

Via iDrive:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Sport displays"
3.  "Sports instruments"

Using driver experience switch:

1. Activating SPORT.
2.  "Sport displays"
3.  "Sports instruments"

### Vehicle state

Following vehicle and ambient data is evaluated:

- ▷ Engine temperature.
- ▷ Outside temperature
- ▷ Tyre temperature and tyre inflation pressure.

Tyre temperature and tyre inflation pressure are measured while driving.

### Check vehicle state

Via iDrive:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Sport displays"
3.  "Vehicle and surroundings"

Using driver experience switch:

1. Activating SPORT.
2.  "Sport displays"

3.  "Vehicle and surroundings"

## Speed warning

### Principle

Display of a speed at which a warning is to be issued when reached.

Repeat warning if the set speed limit was undershot once by at least 5 km/h/3 mph.

### Displaying, setting or altering the speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
5. Press the Controller.

Speed warning is stored.

### Activating/deactivating speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the Controller.

### Saving actual speed as speed warning

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the Controller.

The current driving speed is saved as the speed warning.

## Settings on the Control Display

### Time

#### Setting the time zone

1. "Settings"
  2. "Time/date"
  3. "Time zone:"
  4. Select desired time zone.
- The time zone is saved.

#### Setting the time

1. "Settings"
  2. "Time/date"
  3. "Time:"
  4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed.
  5. Press the controller.
  6. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
  7. Press the controller.
- The time is saved.

#### Setting the time format

1. "Settings"
  2. "Time/date"
  3. "Format:"
  4. Select the desired format.
- The time format is saved.

#### Automatic time setting

Depending on equipment, the time, date and, if necessary, time zone are updated automatically.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/date"
3. "Automatic time setting"

### Date

#### Setting the date

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the controller.
6. Make the setting for month and year accordingly.

The date is saved.

#### Setting the date format

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.

The date format is saved.

### Language

#### Setting the language

To set the language on the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the currently used profile.

#### Setting the speech dialogue

Voice dialogue for the voice control system, see page [25](#).

## Units of measure

### Setting the units of measure

To set the units of measure for fuel consumption, distance covered/remaining range, and temperature:

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/units"
3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

The setting is stored for the currently used profile.

## Brightness

### Adjusting brightness

Adjusting brightness of Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
5. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the currently used profile.

Depending on the lighting conditions, brightness control might not be immediately recognisable.

### Activating/deactivating display of current vehicle position

If GPS location finding is activated, current vehicle position can be displayed in BMW ConnectedDrive App or in ConnectedDrive customer portal.

1. "Settings"
2. "GPS tracking"
3. "GPS tracking"

## Head-Up Display

### Principle

The system projects important information into the field of vision of the driver, for example speed.

The driver can take on information quickly and concentrate on the traffic conditions.

### Notes

#### ATTENTION

The Head-Up Display consists of sensitive components which can be easily scratched or damaged. Danger of damage to property. Do not place objects onto the Head-Up Display, attach them to system components or insert them into the system. Do not move moving parts manually.◀

#### WARNING

Parts of the body can be trapped on extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-Up Display. Danger of injury. When extending and retracting, make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is free.◀

Follow information on cleaning the Head-Up Display, see page [246](#).

### Overview



### Visibility of the display

Visibility of the display on the Head-Up Display is influenced by the following factors:

- ▷ Certain seat positions.
- ▷ Items on the Head-Up Display cover.
- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarisation filters.
- ▷ Wet road.
- ▷ Unfavourable lighting conditions.

If the picture is distorted, have the basic settings checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Switching on/off

When switching on, the projection screen on the Head-Up Display is extended. When switching off, the projection screen on the Head-Up Display is contracted again.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Head-up display"

## Display

### Overview

The following information is displayed in the Head-Up Display:

- ▷ Speed.
- ▷ Navigation system.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- ▷ Driver Assistance Systems.

Some of this information is only shown briefly when needed.

### Selecting displays on the Head-Up Display

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Information displayed"
4. Select desired display on Head-Up Display.

The setting is stored for the currently used profile.

### Adjusting brightness

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient light.

The base setting can be adjusted manually.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is obtained.
5. Press the Controller.

The brightness of the Head-Up Display can also be influenced using the instrument lighting if the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

### Adjusting height

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Height"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired height is obtained.
5. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

### Adjusting rotation

The image of the Head-Up Display can be rotated around its axis.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-up display"
3. "Rotation"

4. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached.
5. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

# Lights

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Overview

### Switch in the vehicle



The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

### Light functions

Symbol	Function
	Rear fog lights
	Front fog lights
	Automatic driving lights control Cornering light and variable light distribution

Symbol	Function
	Lights off Daytime driving lights
	Side lights
	Low-beam headlights
	Headlight beam throw adjustment for halogen headlights
	Instrument lighting

## Side lights, low-beam headlights and parking light

### General

Switch position: , ,

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lights are automatically switched off with these switch settings.

### Side lights

Switch position:

The vehicle is illuminated all round.

You should not leave the side lights on for longer periods of time, since the vehicle battery could discharge and you might not have enough power to start the engine.

To park, switch on the one-sided parking light, see page 106.

### Low-beam headlights

Switch position:

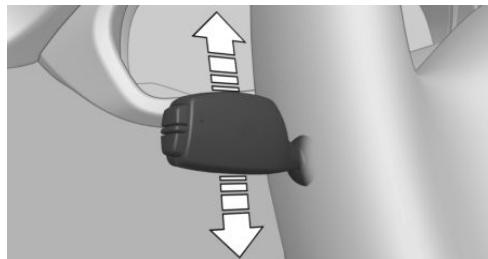
The low-beam headlights illuminate with the ignition switched on.

## Parking lights

### Principle

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

### Switching on



With the ignition switched off, push the lever upwards or downwards beyond the resistance point for approximately 2 seconds.

### Switching off

Press the lever briefly in the opposite direction as far as the resistance point.

## Welcome lights and headlight courtesy delay feature

### Welcome lights

#### General

Depending on the equipment version, switch position or when parking the vehicle.

Individual light functions may be switched on briefly when the vehicle is unlocked, depending on the ambient brightness.

### Activating/deactivating

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Welcome light"

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

### Headlight courtesy delay feature

#### General

If the headlight flasher is activated after switching off the radio ready state, the low-beam headlights illuminate and remain on for a certain amount of time.

### Setting the duration

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Home lights:"
4. Set the duration.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

## Automatic driving lights control

### Principle

Depending on ambient brightness, the system switches the low-beam headlights on or off automatically, for example in a tunnel, at twilight and in rain or snow.

#### General

The headlights may also come on when the sun is sitting low in a blue sky.

When emerging from tunnels in daylight, low-beam headlights are not switched off immediately, but only after approximately 2 minutes.

The low-beam headlights always remain on when the fog lights are switched on.

## Activating

Switch position:

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated with the low-beam headlights switched on.

## System limits

The automatic driving lights control is no substitute for your individual judgement of when it is necessary to switch on the lights.

The sensors are unable, for instance, to recognise fog or hazy weather. In such situations, switch on the lights manually to avoid any safety risk.

# Daytime driving lights

## General

Switch position: ,

The daytime driving lights illuminate with the ignition switched on.

## Activating/deactivating

In some countries daytime driving lights are compulsory, which is why the daytime driving lights cannot be deactivated.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Daytime driving lights"

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

# Cornering light and variable light distribution

## Cornering light

Switch position:

When cornering the cornering light illuminates the area inside the corner as well. Below a speed of 40 km/h, approximately 25 mph with the turn indicator switched on or detected steering angle, it automatically switches on.

## Variable light distribution

Switch position:

The variable light distribution enables better illumination of the carriageway, depending on speed.

- Urban lighting: the illumination area of the low-beam headlights is extended on the sides. The city light is switched on if the speed of 50 km/h, approximately 30 mph is not exceeded while accelerating or if the speed of 40 km/h, approximately 25 mph is undercut while braking.
- Motorway beam pattern: the illumination width of the low-beam headlights is expanded. The motorway beam pattern is switched on if the speed is above 110 km/h, approximately 68 mph for 30 seconds or as soon as the speed exceeds 140 km/h, approximately 87 mph. The motorway beam pattern is switched off as soon as the speed drops below 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

The cornering light or variable light distribution is disrupted or has failed. Immediately have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Headlight beam throw adjustment

### General

With halogen headlights adjust the beam throw of the low-beam headlights manually in accordance with the vehicle load. Otherwise, the glare will disturb drivers of oncoming vehicles.

### Settings

Values applicable when towing a trailer:

- ▷ 0 / 1 = 1 to 2 persons without luggage.
- ▷ 1 / 1 = 5 persons without luggage.
- ▷ 1 / 2 = 5 persons with luggage.
- ▷ 2 / 2 = 1 person, boot fully loaded.

## High-beam assistance

### Principle

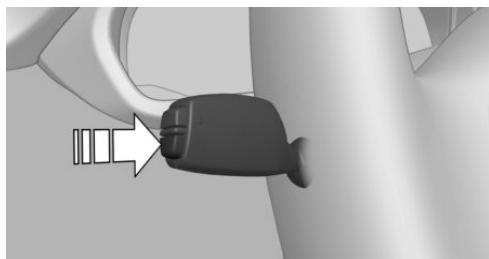
The high-beam assistance detects other road users at an early stage and activates or deactivates the high beam depending on the traffic situation. It ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on when the traffic situation allows. The high-beam headlights are not switched on by the system in the low speed range.

### General

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate lighting, for example in built-up areas.

You can also control the lights yourself at any time and switch them on and off as usual.

### Activating



1. Depending on equipment, turn the light switch to position or .
2. Press the button on the turn indicator lever, arrow.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

When the low-beam headlights are on, the beam is dipped and returned to full beam automatically.



The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates if the high beam is switched on by the system.

### Deactivating

The high-beam assistance is deactivated by manually raising and dipping, see page 79. To reactivate high-beam assistance, press the button on the turn indicator lever.

### System limits

The high-beam assistance cannot replace the personal decision to use the high-beam headlights. In such situations you should dip the headlights manually to avoid a safety hazard.

In the following situations, the system will not operate or its operation will be impaired and your intervention may be required:

- ▷ During extremely unfavourable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- ▷ When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists or horseback riders

or carts, and when trains or ships are close to the road, or when game are passing across the road.

- ▷ On narrow bends, steep uphill or downhill gradients, at traffic junctions or if the view of oncoming vehicles on a motorway is obstructed.
- ▷ In poorly-lit towns and where there are very reflective signs.
- ▷ When the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.

## Fog lights

### Front fog lights

The side lights or low-beam headlights must be switched on.

 Press the button. The green indicator light is illuminated.

If automatic driving lights control, see page 106, has been activated, the low-beam headlights illuminate automatically when the front fog lights are switched on.

### Guiding fog lights

In switch position  , a guide fog light for a wider illumination is also activated up to a speed of 110 km/h, 68 mph.

### Rear fog lights

The low-beam headlights or front fog lights must be switched on.

 Press the button. The yellow indicator lamp is illuminated.

If automatic driving lights control, see page 106, has been activated, the low-beam headlights come on automatically when the rear fog lights are switched on.

## Left-hand/right-hand traffic

### General

When driving in countries where the opposite rule of the road applies, you need to prevent your headlights from dazzling oncoming vehicles.

### Halogen headlights

The Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop has light benders available. Proceed in accordance with the enclosed information when affixing the light benders to the headlights.

### LED headlights

Light distribution of the headlights avoids dazzling of the low-beam headlights when driving in a country in which the traffic drives on the opposite side.

### Variable light distribution

When driving in a country where you drive on the opposite side of the road from the country the vehicle is licensed, do not drive with the  setting, otherwise this could cause a dazzling effect from the variable light distribution.

## Instrument lighting

### Adjusting



The brightness can only be adjusted when the side lights or the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The brightness can be set using the knurled wheel.

## Interior light

### General

The interior light, the footwell lights, door entry lighting and the courtesy lighting are controlled automatically.

The brightness of some equipment is influenced by the knurled wheel for the instrument lighting.

### Overview



**1** Interior light

**2** Reading lights

### Switching the interior light on and off manually

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button for approximately three seconds.

Switch on again: press button.

### Reading lights manually on and off

Press the button.

There are reading lights located at the front and in the rear beside the interior lights.

### Ambient lighting

Depending on the equipment, the lighting in the interior can be set for a few lights.

## Selecting colour scheme

Via iDrive:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Ambient:"
4. Select the desired setting.

To deactivate the ambient light: "Off".

### Adjusting brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "Settings"
2. "Lights"
3. "Brightness:"
4. Adjusting brightness.

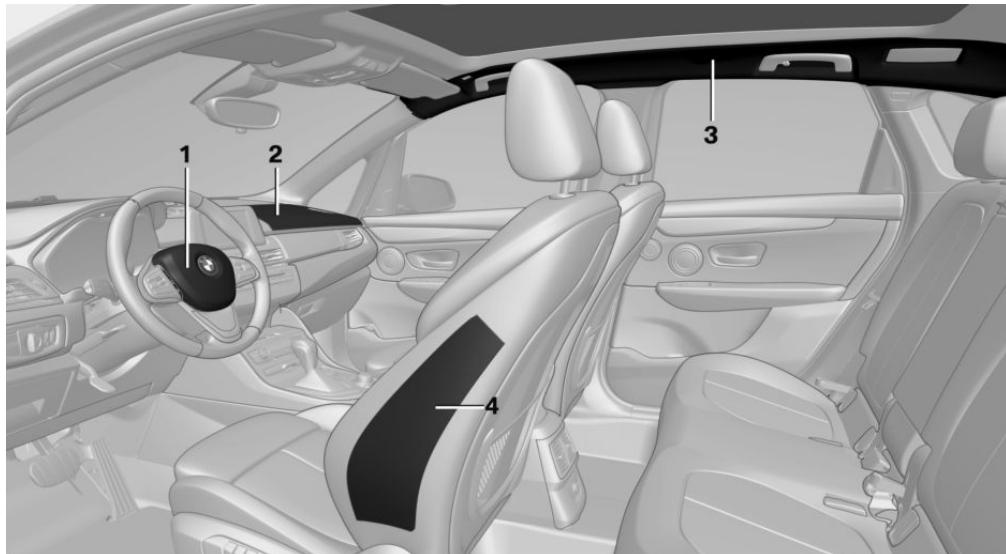
# Security

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the se-

lected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Airbags



**1** Front airbag, driver

**2** Front airbag, front passenger

**3** Head airbag

**4** Side airbag

### Front airbags

Front airbags protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a head-on collision where the action of the seat belts alone would be insufficient.

### Side airbag

In a side-on crash, the side airbag supports the body from the side in the chest and pelvic area.

### Head airbag

The head airbag supports the head in the event of a side-on collision.

### Protective effect

Airbags are not activated by every collision, for example in minor accidents and rear-end collisions.

## Notes on optimum protective effect of the airbag

### WARNING

If the seat position is wrong or the deployment area of the airbag is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide the intended protection, or may cause additional injuries when it deploys. Danger of injury or life. Comply with these notes for optimum protective effect.◀

- ▶ Keep your distance from the airbags.
- ▶ Make sure that vehicle occupants keep their head away from the side airbag.
- ▶ Always grip the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Place your hands in the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of injury to hands or arms when the airbag deploys.
- ▶ Make sure that the front-seat passenger is sitting correctly, in other words with feet or legs in the footwell, not resting them on the dashboard.
- ▶ Do not position any other persons, pets or objects between the airbags and persons.
- ▶ Never attach any material to the airbag covers with adhesive; never place material over them or modify them in any way.
- ▶ Keep the dashboard and windscreen in the area of the passenger's side free, for example do not attach adhesive foil or covers and do not fit brackets for navigation devices or mobile telephones.
- ▶ Do not use the front airbag cover on the front passenger's side as a tray.
- ▶ Do not fit seat covers, cushions or other objects not specifically suitable for seats with integral side airbags to the front seats.
- ▶ Do not hang items of clothing such as coats or jackets over the backrests.
- ▶ Do not modify individual components of the system or its wiring in any way. This also applies to the covers of the steering wheel, the dashboard and seats.

- ▶ Do not dismantle the airbag system.

Even if all these notes are complied with, depending on the circumstances in which an accident occurs, certain injuries as a result of contact with the airbag cannot be entirely ruled out.

The noise caused by the deployment of an airbag may lead to temporary hearing loss for vehicle occupants sensitive to noise.

## Operational readiness of the airbag system

### Notes

### WARNING

Individual components of the airbag system can be hot after triggering. Danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.◀

### WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the airbag system. If there is a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended in an accident, in spite of the accident being of the appropriate severity. Danger of injury or life. Have the airbag system tested, repaired or removed and scrapped by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

## Correct function



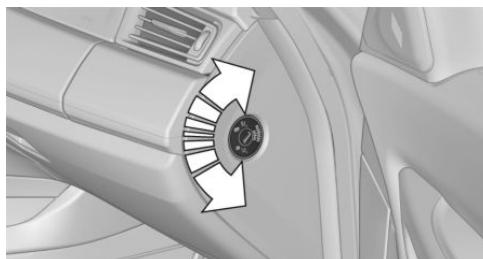
When the ignition is switched on, the warning light in the instrument cluster briefly illuminates in order to show the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

## Airbag system disrupted

- ▶ Warning light does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on.
- ▶ Warning lamp is permanently illuminated.

## Not for Australia/New Zealand: Key switch for front passenger airbags

### General



The front and side airbags for the front passenger can be deactivated and reactivated using the integrated key from the remote control.

### Deactivating the front passenger airbags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the OFF position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the corresponding end position so that the airbags are deactivated.

The front passenger airbags are deactivated. The driver's airbags remain active.

If a child restraint system is no longer fitted in the front passenger seat, reactivate the front passenger airbags so that they are triggered as intended in the event of an accident.

The airbag condition is displayed on the front passenger airbag indicator lamp, see page 113.

## Activating the front passenger airbags



1. Insert the key and press inwards where necessary.
2. While the key is pressed inwards, turn it to the ON position as far as it will go. Once the stop position has been reached, remove the key.
3. Make sure that the key switch is in the corresponding end position so that the airbags are activated.

The front passenger airbags are reactivated and can deploy correctly if the need arises.

### Indicator lamp for front passenger airbags



Depending on the equipment, there will be one of the illustrated indicator lamps.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags shows the operating status of the front passenger airbags.

After switching on the ignition, the light illuminates briefly and then shows whether the airbags are activated or deactivated.

Depending on the equipment version, different indicator lamps may illuminate.

Display	Function
PASSENGER ON AIR BAG 	If the front passenger airbag is activated, the indicator lamp illuminates for a short period and then goes off.
PASS AIR BAG OFF  	When front passenger airbags are deactivated, the indicator lamp remains illuminated. When front passenger airbags are activated, the indicator lamp is not illuminated.
or PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF  	

## Active pedestrian protection system

### Principle

With the active pedestrian protection system, the bonnet is raised if the vehicle front collides with a pedestrian. Sensors underneath the bumper are used for detection. This provides additional deformation space underneath the bonnet for the subsequent head impact.

### Notes

#### WARNING

The system can trigger inadvertently if individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks are contacted. Danger of injury or damage to property. Do not touch individual components of the hinges and bonnet locks.◀

#### WARNING

Changes to the pedestrian protection system can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the pedestrian protection system. Danger of injury or life. Do not make any changes to the pedestrian protection system, its individual components and cabling, and do not remove the system either.◀

#### WARNING

Work carried out incorrectly can lead to a failure, a malfunction or accidental triggering of the system. If there is a malfunction, the system might not trigger as intended in an accident, in spite of the accident being of the appropriate severity. Danger of injury or life. Have the system tested, repaired or removed and scrapped by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

### System limits

The active pedestrian protection system is only triggered at speeds between approximately 30 km/h, approximately 18 mph and 55 km/h, approximately 34 mph.

For safety reasons, the system may also trigger in rare instances where impact with a pedestrian cannot be excluded beyond all doubt, for example:

- ▷ Collision with a skip or a boundary post.
- ▷ Collision with animals.
- ▷ Stone impact.
- ▷ Driving into a snow drift.

### Triggered pedestrian protection system

#### WARNING

Following triggering or damage, the functions of the system will be restricted, or will no longer work at all. Danger of injury or life.

After triggering or if the system is damaged, have it checked and renewed at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

## Malfunction



A Check Control message is shown.  
The system has been triggered or is faulty.

Immediately have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.



### ATTENTION

Opening the bonnet when the pedestrian protection system has triggered can result in damage to the bonnet or the pedestrian protection. Danger of damage to property. Do not open the bonnet after the Check Control message is displayed. Have a check performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

# Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM

## Principle

The system monitors the tyre pressure in the four fitted tyres. The system warns if the inflation pressure in one or more tyres has fallen considerably. To do this, the sensors in the tyre valves measure the tyre pressure and tyre temperatures.

## Note

To operate the system, also follow the other information and notes under tyre inflation pressure, see page 206.

## Operating requirements

For the system, a reset must have been made with the correct tyre inflation pressure, other-

wise reliable signalling of a flat tyre cannot be assured.

Reset the system after adjusting the tyre pressure to a new value and after a tyre or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to guarantee the system functions without errors.

## Status display

The current status of the Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM can be shown on the Control Display, for example whether the TPM is active.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tyre Pressure Monitor (RDC)"

The status is displayed.

## Status control display

The tyre and system status is denoted by the wheel colour and some text on the Control Display.

### All wheels green

System is active and is warning about the tyre inflation pressures saved during the last reset.

### One wheel yellow

A flat tyre or major loss of tyre pressure in the tyre shown.

### All wheels yellow

A flat tyre or major loss of tyre pressure in several tyres.

### Wheels grey

The system cannot detect a flat tyre because of a malfunction.

## Additional information

The current tyre pressures are also displayed in the status control display. The values shown are current values and may change due to the effect of driving mode or weather conditions.

## Running reset

Reset the TPM after adjusting the tyre inflation pressure to a new value and after a tyre or wheel change.

On the Control Display and on the vehicle:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine – do not drive off.
5. Resetting tyre inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive off.

The wheels are shown grey and the status appears on the display.

After driving for a short time over 30 km/h, 19 mph the set tyre inflation pressures are accepted as target values. The reset is run automatically during the journey.

The progress of the reset is shown.

After a successfully concluded reset, the wheels are shown in green on the Control Display and "Tyre Pressure Monitor (RDC) active." is shown.

You can interrupt your journey at any time. Reset resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

## Message if tyre inflation pressure is low



The yellow warning lamp is illuminated. A Check Control message is shown.

- ▷ There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre pressure.
  - ▷ No reset has been done to the system. Consequently, the system warns of the tyre pressures of the last reset.
1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
  2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 209, is the circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.



### WARNING

A damaged normal tyre with too low or missing tyre inflation pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. Danger of accidents. Do not continue to drive unless the vehicle is equipped with run-flat tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.◀

When there is a message that the tyre inflation pressure is low, the Dynamic Stability Control DSC may be switched on.

## What to do in the event of a flat tyre

### Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.

Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tyres.

The tyre inflation pressure display of the Mobility System can be used for this.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Fix the puncture with the Mobility System.

The use of tyre sealant, for example the Mobility System, can damage the TPM wheel electronics. If sealant is used, check the electronics as soon as you get an opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.

## Run-flat tyres

### Top speed

If a tyre has punctured you can continue your journey, driving at speeds up to a maximum of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

### Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

If you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph any longer.
3. As soon as you get an opportunity, check the tyre pressure in all four tyres.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the Tyre Pressure Monitor might not have been reset. Then run reset.

Maximum possible distance with tyres entirely deflated:

The possible driving distance with a flat tyre depends on the load and strain on the vehicle during the journey.

With a moderate vehicle load, it is possible to travel approximately 80 km, 50 miles.

During the journey driving with damaged tyres, the vehicle handling changes, for example quicker loss of traction when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Adapt driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example curbs, potholes etc.

As the possible driving distance largely depends on the strain on the vehicle during the journey, this can be shorter, or longer if the driving style is more careful, according to speed, road condition, outside temperature, load etc.



### WARNING

A damaged tyre with run-flat properties with low or missing tyre inflation pressure will change the driving properties, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Danger of accidents.

Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◀



### WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in particularly heavy trailers starting to slalom. Danger of accident or damage to property.

When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph.

In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◀

### Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which could lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Message with required tyre inflation pressure test

In such situations, a check control message is displayed:

- ▶ System has detected a wheel change, but no reset has been run.
- ▶ Filling was not performed according to the regulations.
- ▶ The tyre inflation pressure has dropped compared to the last confirmation.

If that is the case:

- ▷ Check the tyre pressure and adjust as necessary.
- ▷ Reset the system after a wheel change.

## System limits

The system is not working correctly if no reset has been run, for example, a flat tyre is reported in spite of the correct tyre inflation pressure.

Tyre inflation pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. By increasing tyre temperature, for example, when driving or with solar radiation, the tyre inflation pressure increases.

Tyre inflation pressure decreases if the tyre temperature drops. Through this behaviour, a warning may be triggered if there are major temperature drops, due to the given warning limits.

No warning can be given by the system of extreme, sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

## Malfunction

 The yellow warning lamp flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is shown. No flat tyres or loss of tyre pressure can be detected.

Examples and recommendations for the following situations:

- ▷ Wheel without TPM electronics is fitted. If necessary, have a check performed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.
- ▷ TPM has not completed a reset. Run a reset of the system again.
- ▷ Fault due to systems or devices with the same frequency: the system is automatically reactivated upon leaving the field of interference.

## Runflat indicator RPA

### Principle

The system identifies a loss of tyre pressure by comparing the speeds of rotation of the individual wheels while the vehicle is in motion.

If a tyre loses pressure, its diameter changes. This in turn alters the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel. This is detected and reported as a flat tyre.

The system does not measure the tyre pressures as such.

### Operating requirements

The system must have been initialised with correct tyre inflation pressure, otherwise reliable signalling of a flat tyre cannot be assured. Each time the tyre pressure is adjusted or a tyre or wheel is changed, initialise the system again.

### Status display

The current status of the runflat indicator can be shown on the Control Display, for example whether the RPA is active.

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Flat Tyre Monitor (RPA)"

The status is displayed.

### Initialising

On initialisation, the current tyre pressures are saved as a reference for detection of a flat tyre. The initialisation is started by confirming the correct tyre inflation pressures.

When driving with snow chains fitted, do not initialise the system.

On the Control Display:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine – do not drive off.
5. Start initialisation: "Perform reset".
6. Drive off.

Initialising is completed during the journey; this process can be interrupted at any time.

Initialising resumes automatically when you continue your journey.

### Message of a flat tyre



The yellow warning lamp is illuminated.  
A Check Control message is shown.

There is a flat tyre or substantial loss of tyre pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and carefully stop the vehicle. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Check whether the vehicle is equipped with standard tyres or run-flat tyres.

The symbol identifying run-flat tyres, see page 209, is the circle with the letters RSC on the tyre side wall.



#### WARNING

A damaged normal tyre with too low or missing tyre inflation pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Tyres with run-flat properties allow a limited level of stability to be maintained. Danger of accidents. Do not continue to drive unless the vehicle is equipped with run-flat tyres. Comply with the notes on run-flat tyres and continuing to drive with these tyres.◀

It is possible that Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated as soon as the message for a flat tyre appears.

### System limits

A natural, even loss of tyre pressure in all four tyres that occurs over time is not detected. Consequently, check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.

No warning can be given in the event of sudden tyre failure caused by external factors.

In the following situations, the system could be slow to respond or operate incorrectly:

- ▷ If the system has not been initialised.
- ▷ Journey on snow-covered or slippery surfaces.
- ▷ Dynamic driving style: causing the drive gears to spin, high lateral acceleration.
- ▷ Driving with snow chains.

### What to do in the event of a flat tyre

#### Standard tyres

1. Identify the damaged tyre.  
Do this by checking the air pressure in all four tyres.

The tyre inflation pressure display of the Mobility System, see page 210, can be used for this.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct tyre inflation pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

If it is not possible to identify tyre damage, contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

2. Fix the puncture with the Mobility System, see page 210.

#### Run-flat tyres

#### Top speed

If a tyre has punctured you can continue your journey, driving at speeds up to a maximum of 80 km/h, 50 mph.

## Continuing a journey with a flat tyre

If you continue a journey with a flat tyre:

1. Avoid violent or sudden braking and steering manoeuvres.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph any longer.
3. As soon as you get an opportunity, check the tyre pressure in all four tyres.

If all four tyres are inflated to the correct pressures, the runflat indicator might not have been initialised. In this case initialise the system.

Maximum possible distance with tyres entirely deflated:

The possible driving distance with a flat tyre depends on the load and strain on the vehicle during the journey.

With a moderate vehicle load, it is possible to travel approximately 80 km, 50 miles.

During the journey driving with damaged tyres, the vehicle handling changes, for example quicker loss of traction when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Adapt driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering or driving over obstacles, for example curbs, potholes etc.

As the possible driving distance largely depends on the strain on the vehicle during the journey, this can be shorter, or longer if the driving style is more careful, according to speed, road condition, outside temperature, load etc.

### WARNING

A damaged tyre with run-flat properties with low or missing tyre inflation pressure will change the driving properties, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour. Danger of accidents.

Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph. ◀

### WARNING

Continuing to drive with a flat tyre can result in particularly heavy trailers starting to slalom. Danger of accident or damage to property.

When driving with a trailer and a flat tyre, do not exceed the speed of 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph.

In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible. ◀

## Final tyre failure

Vibration or loud noises during the journey may be an indication that the tyre has finally failed.

Reduce your speed and stop the vehicle. Parts of the tyre could detach, which could lead to an accident.

Do not continue driving, but contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Intelligent Safety

### Principle

Intelligent Safety permits central operation of driver assistance systems. Depending on equipment, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems which can help to avoid the risk of a collision.

- ▷ Front-end collision with city braking function, see page [121](#).
- ▷ Person warning, see page [124](#).
- ▷ Lane departure warning, see page [127](#).

### Notes

### WARNING

Displays and warnings do not take your personal responsibility from you. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued, are issued too late, or

are issued incorrectly. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



## WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

### Switching on/off

Several Intelligent Safety Systems are active automatically at the start of each journey. Several Intelligent Safety Systems are active depending on the last setting.



Press the button briefly:

- ▶ The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown. The systems are switched off individually depending on the individual setting.
- ▶ LED illuminates orange or goes out, depending on individual setting.

Press the button twice if necessary to switch off the front-end collision warning.

Settings are made. The individual settings are saved for the currently used profile.



Press the button again:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
- ▶ LED is illuminated green.



Press and hold down the button:

- ▶ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
- ▶ LED turns off.

### Front-end collision warning with city braking function

#### Principle

The system can help avoid accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system helps to reduce the collision speed.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision and brakes automatically, as necessary.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

The system is controlled by a camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.

The front-end collision warning is also available if the Cruise Control is disabled.

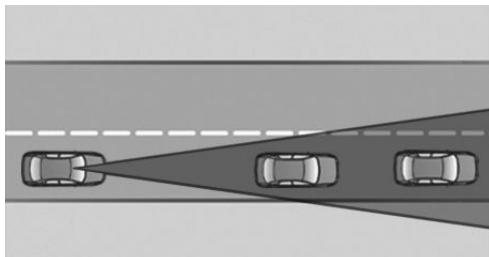
When deliberately approaching a vehicle, the approach control warning and braking intervention are activated later to avoid unjustified system responses.

#### General

The system will provide a warning from approximately 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph in two stages of any risk of collision with vehicles. The timing of these warnings may vary depending on the current driving situation.

Up to approximately 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph there may be brake intervention.

## Detection range



Objects are taken into account if they are detected by the system.

## Notes

### **WARNING**

Displays and warnings do not take your personal responsibility from you. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued, are issued too late, or are issued incorrectly. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

### **WARNING**

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

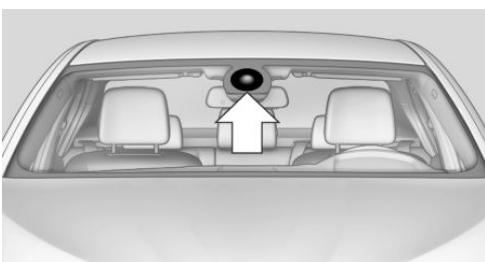
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



 Intelligent Safety button

### Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

### Switching on/off

#### Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

#### Switching on/off manually



Press the button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown. The systems are switched off individually depending on the individual setting.

- ▷ LED illuminates orange or goes out, depending on individual setting.

Press the button twice if necessary to switch off the front-end collision warning.

Settings are made. The individual settings are saved for the currently used profile.

 Press the button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
- ▷ LED is illuminated green.

 Press and hold down the button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
- ▷ LED turns off.

## Setting warning time

The warning time can be set using iDrive.

1. "Settings"
2. "Collision warning"
3. Set the desired warning time on the Control Display.

The selected warning time is saved for the currently used profile.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol illuminates red: advance warning. Increase braking and distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. System indicates that you must brake and/or manoeuvre the vehicle yourself.

### Advance warning

An advance warning is shown, for example if a danger of collision is anticipated or there is a very short distance to a vehicle ahead.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an advance warning.

### Acute warning with braking function

An acute warning is shown in the event of an immediate collision if the vehicle approaches an object with high differential speed.

The driver must intervene personally if there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by slight automatic brake intervention if there is a risk of collision.

An acute warning can be triggered even without a previous advance warning.

### Brake intervention

The warning requires to take action yourself. Maximum braking force is used during a warning. In order for braking force support to be used, it is necessary for the brake to be pressed sufficiently quickly and powerfully. In addition, the system may also support with a small amount of braking if there is the risk of a collision. The vehicle can be braked at low speed until it comes to a stop.

Manual gearbox: When brakes are engaged until it comes to a stop, the engine may shut off.

There will only be brake intervention if Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

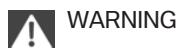
Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Detection of objects can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.
- ▷ When there is sustained glare effect due to light opposite, for example the sun low in the sky.

## System limits

### Note



**WARNING**  
The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

## Sensitivity of the warnings

The greater the sensitivity of the warning settings, for example warning time, the more warnings will be displayed. As a result, there may be an increased number of incorrect warnings.

## Detection range

The detection ability of the system is limited.

For this reason, system responses may be missing or delayed.

It is possible that the following are not detected:

- ▷ Slow-moving vehicle when approaching at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles suddenly cutting in or braking heavily.
- ▷ Vehicles with unusual rear view.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead.

## Restrictions of the function

The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ In thick fog, rain, spray or snowfall.
- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When deactivating vehicle stability control systems, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera in the mirror is soiled or covered.

## Person warning with city braking function

### Principle

The system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians.

The system warns of the possible risk of collision with pedestrians in the urban speed area and also contains a braking function.

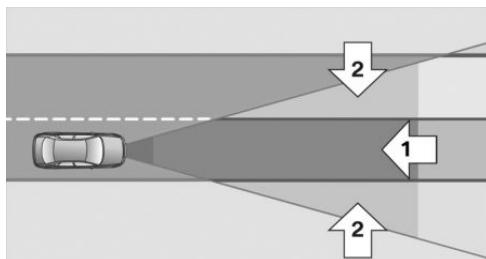
The system is controlled by the camera in the area of the rear-view mirror.

### General

The system warns with sufficient brightness from approximately 10 km/h, approximately 6 mph up to approximately 60 km/h, approximately 35 mph of any risk of collision with pedestrians and supports this by briefly applying the brakes before a collision.

Here, persons are taken into account if they are located within the detection range of the system.

## Detection range



The detection zone in front of the vehicle consists of two parts:

- ▷ Central zone, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Extended zone, arrow 2, at right and left.

There is a risk of collision if persons are in the central zone. A warning is only given of persons in the extended zone if they are moving in the direction of the central zone.

## Notes



### WARNING

Displays and warnings do not take your personal responsibility from you. System limitations can mean that warnings or system responses are not issued, are issued too late, or are issued incorrectly. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



### WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

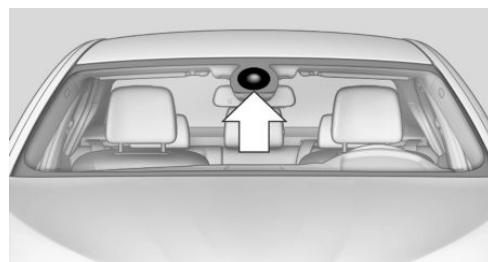
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

### Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

## Switching on/off

### Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated at the start of each journey.

### Switching on/off manually



Press the button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown. The systems are switched off individually depending on the individual setting.

- ▷ LED illuminates orange or goes out, depending on individual setting.

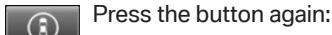
Press the button twice if necessary to switch off the front-end collision warning.

Settings are made. The individual settings are saved for the currently used profile.

There will only be brake intervention if Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated.

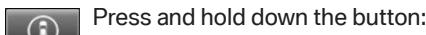
Braking can be discontinued either by pressing the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Detection of objects can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.



Press the button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
- ▷ LED is illuminated green.



Press and hold down the button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
- ▷ LED turns off.

## Warning with braking function

### Display

If there is a risk of collision with a detected person, a warning symbol is shown in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.



Red symbol is displayed and an acoustic warning sounds.

Take action yourself immediately, by braking or swerving.

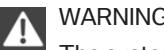
### Brake intervention

The warning requires to take action yourself. Maximum braking force is used during a warning. In order for braking force support to be used, it is necessary for the brake to be pressed sufficiently quickly and powerfully. In addition, the system may also support with a small amount of braking if there is the risk of a collision. The vehicle can be braked at low speed until it comes to a stop.

Manual gearbox: When brakes are engaged until it comes to a stop, the engine may shut off.

## System limits

### Note



#### WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

### Detection range

The detection capacity of the camera is limited.

This is why it can occur that no warnings are issued or they are issued late.

It is possible that the following are not detected:

- ▷ Partially concealed pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians who are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians under a height of approximately 80 cm, 32 in.

### Restrictions of the function

The function may be restricted or not available in the following situations, for example:

The function may be available on a limited basis in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ In thick fog, rain, spray or snowfall.
- ▷ On sharp bends.

- ▷ When deactivating vehicle stability control systems, for example DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera and/or the windscreens is dirty or covered.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.
- ▷ When there is sustained glare effect due to light opposite, for example the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ In the dark.

## Lane departure warning

### Principle

This system warns if the vehicle leaves the lane, when the vehicle is on roads with lane markings and travelling above a given speed. Depending on country version, this speed is between 55 km/h, approximately 35 mph and 70 km/h, approximately 45 mph.

When there are warnings, the steering wheel starts to vibrate slightly. The timing of this warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not issue a warning if the driver indicates before leaving the driving lane.

### Note

#### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the course of the road and traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it. Do not move the steering wheel with unnecessary force in case of warnings.◀

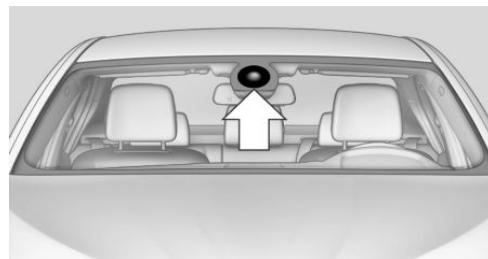
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



Intelligent Safety button

### Camera



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear view mirror.

### Switching on/off

#### Automatic activation

The Lane Departure Warning is reactivated automatically at the start of a journey if the function was switched on during the last period when the engine was stopped.

#### Switching on/off manually



Press the button briefly:

- ▷ The menu for the Intelligent Safety Systems is shown. The systems

are switched off individually depending on the individual setting.

- ▷ LED illuminates orange or goes out, depending on individual setting.

Press the button twice if necessary to switch off the front-end collision warning.

Settings are made. The individual settings are saved for the currently used profile.



Press the button again:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched on.
- ▷ LED is illuminated green.



Press and hold down the button:

- ▷ All Intelligent Safety Systems are switched off.
- ▷ LED turns off.

## Display in the instrument cluster



- ▷ Lines: the system is activated.
- ▷ Arrows: at least one lane boundary line has been detected and warnings can be issued.

## Output of the warning

If the vehicle leaves the driving lane and a lane marking is detected, the steering wheel starts to vibrate.

If the turn indicator is set before changing lanes, no warning is issued.

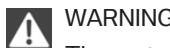
## Cancellation of the warning

The warning is interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after approximately 3 seconds.
- ▷ On returning to the correct lane.
- ▷ With strong braking.
- ▷ On indicating.

## System limits

### Note



### WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

## Restrictions of the function

The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ In thick fog and heavy rain or snow.
- ▷ With missing, worn, poorly visible, merging/separating or ambiguous boundary lines, for example in areas where there are road works.
- ▷ If boundary lines are covered by snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ On sharp bends or narrow roads.
- ▷ If the boundary lines are not white.
- ▷ If boundary lines are obscured.
- ▷ If the vehicle is moving too close to the vehicle ahead.
- ▷ With bright oncoming light.
- ▷ When the windscreen in front of the rear-view mirror is covered with condensation, dirt, stickers, labels, etc.
- ▷ During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.

## Manual speed limiter

### Principle

With the system, the speed can be restricted from a value of 30 km/h/20 mph. There are no restrictions below the set speed limit.

## Exceeding the speed limit

In particular situations the speed limit can be deliberately exceeded by accelerating strongly.

The system gives a warning if the travelling speed exceeds the set speed limit.

## No brake intervention

If the set speed limit has been reached or unintentionally exceeded (for example driving downhill) there is no brake intervention.

If you set a speed limit during the journey which is below the current speed, the vehicle rolls until the driving speed drops below the speed limit.

## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

Press the button Function

**LIM** Switching system on/off, see page 129

 Rocker switch: Change speed limit, see page 129

## Controls

### Switching on

**LIM** Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is assumed as the speed limit.

When switching on when at a standstill 30 km/h/20 mph is set as the speed limit.

The speedometer marker is set to the corresponding speed.

When activating the speed limit it is possible that Dynamic Stability Control DSC is activated and the drive mode is changed to COMFORT.

## Switching off

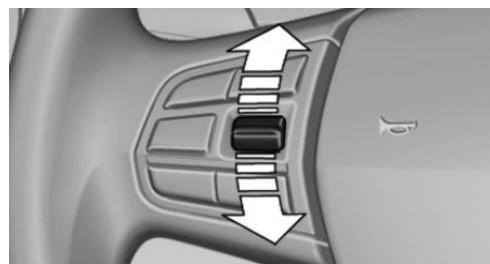
**LIM** Press the button on the steering wheel.

For example, the system is also deactivated in the following situations:

- ▶ When engaging reverse gear.
- ▶ When switching the engine off.
- ▶ When switching on Cruise Control.
- ▶ When activating some programs using the drive experience switch.

The indicators turn off.

### Change speed limit



Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed limit is set.

- ▶ Every time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased by approximately 1 km/h, approximately 1 mph.
- ▶ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the speed limit is increased or decreased to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the speedometer display.

If you set a speed limit during the journey which is below the current speed, the vehicle rolls until the driving speed drops below the speed limit.

### Exceeding the speed limit

You may intentionally exceed the speed limit. There is no acoustic warning in such a case.

To intentionally exceed the set speed limit, completely depress the accelerator pedal.

If the speed drops below the set speed limit, it is automatically reactivated.

## Warning

### Visual warning

**LIM** The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster flashes if the set speed limit is exceeded for as long as you exceed the set speed limit.

### Acoustic warning

- ▷ A signal sounds if you inadvertently exceed the set speed limit.
- ▷ If the speed limit is reduced to below the current speed during the journey, the warning sounds after approximately 30 seconds.
- ▷ If you intentionally exceed the speed limit by fully depressing the accelerator pedal, no warning is given.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Marking of the speed limit

Display in the speedometer:



- ▷ Marker illuminates green: the system is active.
- ▷ Marker does not illuminate: the system is inactive.

### Indicator lamp

- LIM**
- ▷ If the indicator lamp is illuminated: the system is switched on.
  - ▷ If the indicator lamp is flashing: set speed limit is exceeded.

### Brief status display

**LIMIT** Set speed limit briefly appears.  
**90**

## Dynamic brake lights

### Principle



- ▷ Normal braking: brake lights illuminate.
- ▷ Severe braking: brake lights flash.

Shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated.

Deactivating the hazard warning lights:

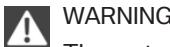
- ▷ Accelerating.
- ▷ Press the hazard warning lights button.

## Attentiveness assistant

### Principle

The system can detect decreasing attentiveness or tiring of the driver on long monotonous journeys, for example on motorways. In this situation, it is recommended that you take a break.

### Note



#### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating your physical condition. Increasing inattention or fatigue might not be detected, or not in good time. Danger of accidents. Make sure that the drive is rested and alert. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions.◀

## Function

The system is switched on every time the engine is started and cannot be switched off.

After the start of the drive, the system is adapted to the driver so that a decrease in attention or fatigue can be detected.

This process considers the following criteria:

- ▷ Personal driving style, for example, steering.
- ▷ Drive conditions, for example, time of day, duration of drive.

The system is active from approximately. 70 km/h, 43 mph and can display a recommendation to take a break.

## Recommendation to take a break

With decreasing attention or tiredness of the driver, a note is shown on the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

A recommendation to take a break will only be displayed once during an uninterrupted journey.

After a break, at the earliest another break recommendation may be displayed after approximately 45 minutes.

## System limits

The function may be restricted in situations such as the following and no warning or a wrong one is triggered:

- ▷ If the time is set incorrectly.
- ▷ If the speed driven falls considerably below 70 km/h, 43 mph.
- ▷ For dynamic driving style, for example, with heavy acceleration or fast cornering.
- ▷ In active drive situations, for example, frequent lane changes.
- ▷ With poor road conditions.
- ▷ With strong side-wind.

## PostCrash

The system can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill in certain accident situations without the involvement of the driver. The risk of a further collision and its consequences can thereby be reduced.

By depressing the brake pedal, the vehicle can be decelerated much faster. The automatic braking is interrupted as a result. By pressing the accelerator pedal, automatic braking is also interrupted.

After reaching a standstill, the brake is automatically triggered. Then secure the vehicle against rolling away.

# Driving stability control systems

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Anti-lock Brake System, ABS

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied.

Steering control is retained even in the event of full braking, enhancing active road safety. ABS is ready to operate each time the engine is started.

## Brake assist

When brake is pressed quickly, this system automatically applies maximum braking power assistance. With full braking, this keeps the braking distance as short as possible. It also makes full use of the advantages offered by ABS.

Maintain pressure on the brake during the entire brake application.

## Dynamic Stability Control, DSC

### Principle

The Dynamic Stability Control detects the following unstable driving conditions, for example:

- ▷ Loss of traction at the rear which can lead to oversteer.
- ▷ Loss of grip of the front wheels which can lead to understeer.

The system reduces engine output and applies the brakes on individual wheels, helping, within the limits imposed by the laws of physics, to keep the vehicle safely on course.

### Note

The driver remains responsible for driving appropriately for the situation, irrespective of the system.

Drive appropriately for the situation and do not restrict the additional safety offered by risky driving.



### WARNING

When driving with a roof load, for example with a roof rack, the higher centre of gravity can mean that driving safety is no longer guaranteed in critical driving situations. Danger of accident or damage to property. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with a roof load.◀

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF button

### Indicator and warning lights



If indicator light is flashing: DSC is regulating the acceleration and braking forces.

If indicator light is illuminated: DSC has failed.

### Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

#### General

Driving stability during acceleration and cornering is restricted if DSC is deactivated.

To support the driving stability, re-activate DSC as soon as possible.

#### Deactivating DSC



Press and hold down the button – but for no longer than approximately 10 seconds – until the DSC OFF indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated and DSC OFF is displayed.

DSC is switched off.

#### Activating DSC



Press the button.

The DSC OFF and DSC OFF indicator lamps are not illuminated.

### Indicator and warning lights

DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster when DSC is deactivated.



If indicator light is illuminated: DSC is deactivated.

### Automatic activation

With DSC deactivated, there is automatic activation in the following situations:

- ▷ In the event of a flat tyre.
- ▷ When activating Cruise Control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

### Dynamic Traction Control DTC

#### Principle

DTC is a variant of the DSC optimised for forward momentum.

In particular road conditions, for example roads on which snow has not been cleared or unconsolidated ground, system ensures maximum forward momentum but limited driving stability.

There is maximum traction with DTC activated. Driving stability is limited on accelerating and cornering.

Therefore, drive with the appropriate caution.

In the following exceptional situations it may be best to activate DTC for a short time:

- ▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- ▷ If the vehicle has to be rocked out of or started in deep snow or on a loose surface.
- ▷ Driving with snow chains.

## Deactivating/activating Dynamic Traction Control, DTC

### Activating DTC

 Press the button.

TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated.

### Deactivating DTC

 Press the button again.

TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator light no longer illuminate.

## Performance Control

Performance Control increases the agility of the vehicle.

To increase manoeuvrability, with a correspondingly dynamic driving style, wheels are braked individually. The resulting braking power is simultaneously largely compensated by an engine intervention.

## xDrive

xDrive is the four-wheel drive system available in your vehicle. The combination of xDrive and DSC further optimises traction and driving dynamics. The xDrive four-wheel drive system distributes the drive forces variably to the front and rear axles based on the driving situation and the condition of the road.

## Dynamic Damper Control

### Principle

Suspension set-up can be changed using the system.

## Programs

The system provides different programs.

The programs can be selected via the Drive experience, see page 135.

### SPORT

Resolute sports configuration of the shock absorbers for greater agility when driving.

### COMFORT/ECO PRO

Balanced shock absorber set-up for greater comfort.

## Servotronic

### Principle

The Servotronic varies the steering force required when steering, depending on the speed. At low speeds the steering force is heavily supported, in other words a slight force is needed when steering. With increasing speed the support for the steering force is reduced.

In addition, steering force is adapted according to drive program, giving a sporty/direct or comfortable steering response.

## Variable sports steering

The variable sports steering amplifies the steering angle of the front wheels when the steering wheel is fully turned, for example in tight bends or when parking. The steering becomes more direct.

It also varies the force required when steering, depending on the speed.

This enables a sports-oriented steering response. In addition, steering is made easier during parking and manoeuvring.

## Drive experience switch

### Principle

With the drive experience switch, certain properties of the vehicle can be adjusted. Various programs can be selected for this.

### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



#### Operation of the programs

Press the button	Program
	SPORT
	COMFORT
	ECO PRO

#### **SPORT**

Resolute sporty configuration of the steering and the drive for higher agility when driving.

With corresponding equipment, suspension set-up additionally changes and SPORT can be individually configured.

The configuration is saved for the currently used profile.

### Activating **SPORT**



Press button until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Configuring **SPORT**

If display on Control Display is activated, SPORT can be configured individually.

1. Activating SPORT.
2. Select "Configure SPORT".
3. Configure the program.

SPORT can also be configured before it is activated:

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure SPORT"

This configuration is called up when SPORT is activated.

#### **COMFORT**

For balanced tuning.

### Activating **COMFORT**



Press button until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

#### **ECO PRO**

ECO PRO, see page 194, offers a consistent tuning for reducing consumption, in order to achieve maximum range.

### Activate **ECO PRO**



Press the button until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Configuring ECO PRO

### Via driver experience switch

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"
3. Configure the program.

This configuration is called up when ECO PRO is activated.

### Via iDrive

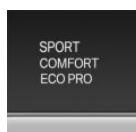
1. "Settings"
  2. "ECO PRO mode"
- or
1. "Settings"
  2. "Driving mode"
  3. "Configure ECO PRO"

Configure the program.

This configuration is called up when ECO PRO is activated.

## Displays

### Program selection



On pushing the button, a list of programs that can be selected is displayed. Depending on equipment, the list in the instrument cluster may differ from what is displayed.

### Selected program



The selected program is shown in the instrument cluster.

## Display on the Control Display

Program changes can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Driving mode info"

## Drive-off assistant

### Principle

The system provides support when driving off on upward gradients. It is not necessary to use the parking brake for this.

### Driving off with drive-off assistant

1. Hold the vehicle in place by pressing the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

The vehicle is held for approximately 2 seconds after the foot brake has been released.

The possible holding duration is 2 minutes, given corresponding equipment.

Depending on the vehicle's load or when towing a trailer, the vehicle may roll backwards a little.

# Driving comfort

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Camera-based Cruise Control with stop & go function, ACC

### Principle

This system can be used to select a desired speed which the vehicle automatically maintains when the road ahead of you is clear.

Within the limits of its capability, the system automatically adapts the vehicle's speed to that of a slower vehicle in front of you.

A camera on the rear-view mirror is used to detect a vehicle in front.

You can vary the distance maintained by the system between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

It is dependent on speed for safety reasons.

To maintain distance, the system automatically decelerates, brakes slightly if necessary, and accelerates again when the vehicle in front of you starts to move more quickly.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill, and sets off again within a short time, the system can comprehend this within the given framework. Your own vehicle is braked and accelerated again automatically.

When vehicle ahead drives off after some time, briefly press accelerator pedal or press corre-

sponding button to activate system. Vehicle is accelerated automatically.

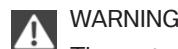
As soon as the road in front of you is clear, the vehicle accelerates to your desired speed.

This speed will also be maintained on downward gradients, but may be under-run on upward gradients if engine output is insufficient.

### General

Characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas depending on vehicle setting.

### Notes



#### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



#### WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can start moving and rolling away. Danger of accidents. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent rolling away.

Observe the following to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away:

- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Turn the front wheels into the direction of the kerb on upward or downward gradients.
- ▶ Additionally secure the vehicle on upward or downward gradients, for example using a wedge.◀

## Overview

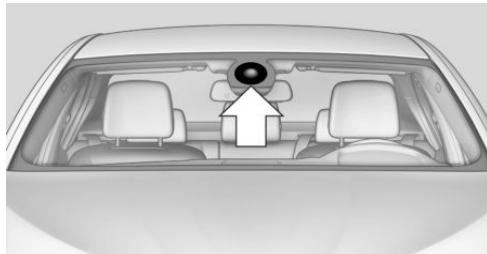
### Buttons on the steering wheel

Press the button	Function
	Cruise Control on/off, interrupt, see page 138.
	Resume speed, see page 140.
	With queue assistant: set distance, see page 143.
	Rocker switch. Change/maintain speed, see page 139.
	With traffic-queue assistant: traffic-queue assistant on/off, see page 143.

The arrangement of buttons varies depending on equipment or country version.

### Camera

A camera is used for vehicle detection.



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

### Switching the Cruise Control on/off and interrupting

#### Switching on



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Indicator lamps are illuminated in the instrument cluster and the speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control can be used.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

#### Switching off

When switching off with the vehicle at a standstill, press the brake at the same time.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

► When activated: press twice.

► When interrupted: press once.

The indicators turn off. The saved desired speed is deleted.

#### Interrupting



Press the button on the steering wheel.

If you interrupt when the vehicle is at a standstill, press the brake at the same time.

The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- If the brake is applied.
- If the selector lever is moved out of selector lever position D.
- If DTC is activated.
- If DSC intervenes.
- If the vehicle is stationary and the seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.

- ▷ If the detection zone of the camera is disrupted, for example, due to dirt, heavy rainfall or dazzling by the sun.
- ▷ After an extended stationary period, if the vehicle was decelerated by the system to a standstill.

## Maintaining, saving, changing speed

### Notes

#### **!** WARNING

The desired speed can be inadvertently set incorrectly or called up. Danger of accidents. Adapt the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

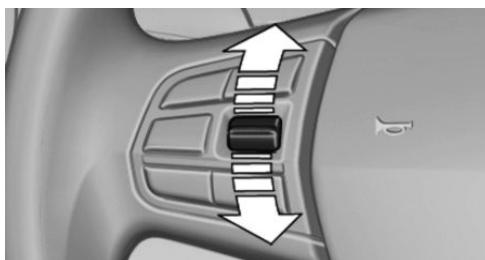
#### **!** WARNING

Danger of accident due to excessive speed differences compared to other vehicles, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ Quickly approaching a slowly moving vehicle.
- ▷ Another vehicle suddenly veering into the vehicle's own lane.
- ▷ Quickly approaching stationary vehicles.

Danger of injury or life. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

### Maintaining speed, saving



During the interruption, press the rocker switch.

With the system switched on, the driven speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

This is shown in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster, see page 140.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

### Changing speed

Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed is set.

With the system active, the speed that is then shown is set and will be achieved on a clear road.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed up to the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased by approximately 1 km/h, 1 mph.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the speedometer display.

Hold the rocker switch in one position to repeat the corresponding action.

### Distance

#### **!** WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you. Braking may be performed too late because of system limitations. Danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the traffic conditions attentively at all times. Adapt the distance to traffic and weather conditions, and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.◀

### With traffic-queue assistant: set distance

-  Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

-  The set distance is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster.

## Recalling the desired speed and distance

### During the journey

 With the system interrupted, press the button. The control of the desired speed and distance is continued with the saved values. Selected speed is briefly displayed on Info Display.

The saved speed value is deleted and can no longer be called up in the following instances:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off.

### When the vehicle is at a standstill

The vehicle was braked to a complete stop by the system:

- ▷ Green marker in the speedometer:  
Your own vehicle automatically accelerates as soon as the vehicle travels out of the range of the camera.
- ▷ Marker in the speedometer changes to orange: no automatic driving away.  
To accelerate automatically to desired speed, briefly press accelerator pedal or press RES button.

Rolling bars in distance display show that vehicle has driven away in detection range of camera.

The system was interrupted or your vehicle has been actively braked to a standstill by pressing the brake and is now behind another vehicle:

1.  Press the button to call up a saved desired speed.
2. Release the brake.
3. Briefly depress accelerator pedal, press RES button or rocker switch when vehicle ahead of you drives off.

## Switching between Cruise Control with/without distance control

### WARNING

The system does not react to traffic travelling in front of you, but maintains the saved speed. Danger of accident or damage to property. Adapt the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake if necessary.◀

Switching to Cruise Control without distance control:



With queue assistant: press and hold the button.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

To switch back to Cruise Control with distance control, press button again briefly.

A Check Control message is displayed after switching.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Desired speed



- ▷ Marker illuminates green: the system is active.
- ▷ Marker illuminates orange: the system is interrupted.
- ▷ Marker does not illuminate: the system is inactive.

### Brief status display



Selected desired speed.

If no speed is displayed, the conditions required for operation may not be fulfilled at the moment.

### Vehicle distance

The selected distance to the vehicle ahead is displayed.

## Distance indicator



Distance 1



Distance 2



Distance 3

Automatically set after switching on the system. Corresponds to approximately half of the value in the speedometer display, expressed in metres.



Distance 4

**Rolling bars:** the detected vehicle has driven off.

ACC does not accelerate. To accelerate, activate ACC by briefly accelerating, RES button or rocker switch.

## Indicator and warning lamps



Symbol illuminates orange:

Preceding vehicle detected.



Symbol flashes orange:

The requirements for operation of the system are no longer being met.

The system was deactivated but will continue to brake until you actively take over by depressing the brake or the accelerator pedal.



Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds:

System indicates that you must brake and/or manoeuvre the vehicle yourself.



System interrupted or distance control briefly disabled because the accelerator pedal is pressed although a vehicle is not detected.



Distance control briefly suppressed because the accelerator pedal is pressed while a vehicle is detected.

## Displays on the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown on Head-Up Display.

## System limits

### Note



### WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

## Speed range

The system can also be activated when the vehicle is at a standstill.

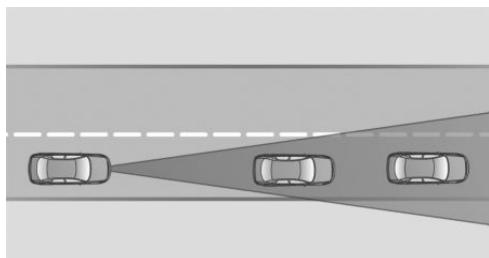
The optimum area of use is on well-constructed roads.

Desired speed can be selected between 30 km/h/20 mph and 140 km/h/85 mph.

When you use the system, comply with the legally prescribed maximum road speed.

After toggling the Cruise Control without distance control, even higher desired speeds can be selected.

## Detection range



The detection capability of the system and automatic braking capacity are limited.

For example, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

### **WARNING**

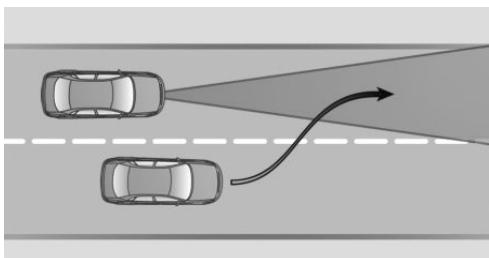
The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

## Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

- ▶ Pedestrians, cyclists or similar slow road users.
- ▶ Red traffic lights.
- ▶ Crossing traffic.
- ▶ Oncoming traffic.
- ▶ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with faulty lighting at night.

## Vehicles pulling out



A vehicle driving ahead of you is only detected when it is fully in your driving lane.

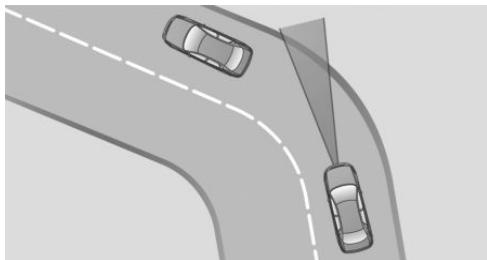
If another vehicle suddenly pulls out in front of you, the system might not be able to re-establish the selected distance of its own accord.

The same applies when you are driving significantly faster than the vehicle in front of you, for example when you are rapidly approaching a lorry. If a vehicle is clearly detected in front of you, the system requires that you intervene by braking, and if necessary by taking evasive action.

### **WARNING**

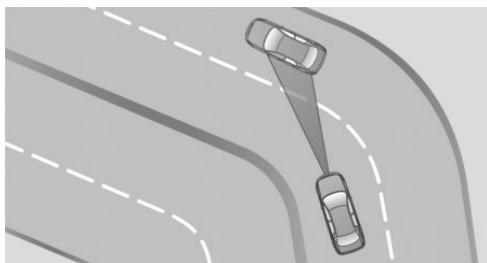
The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

## Cornering



If the desired speed is too high for cornering, it will be reduced slightly in the corner. However, the system does not detect corners in advance. For this reason, moderate your speed when cornering.

Due to the system's limited detection range, tight bends may lead to vehicles ahead being detected only later or not at all.



When your vehicle is approaching a bend, the angle of the bend may cause the system to respond temporarily to vehicles in the other lane. A possible reduction in the vehicle's speed by the system can be compensated for by briefly accelerating. When the accelerator pedal is released again, the system will resume control of the vehicle's speed.

## Starting

Vehicle cannot drive off automatically in following situations, for example:

- ▷ On steep upward inclines.
- ▷ Before bumps in the road.
- ▷ When towing a heavy trailer.

In such cases, press accelerator pedal.

## Weather

In unfavourable weather or light conditions, for example during rain, snow, slush, fog or oncoming glare, detection of vehicles may deteriorate and there may be brief interruptions of already detected vehicles. Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, e.g. by braking, steering or manoeuvring.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed if the system has failed or has been automatically deactivated.

The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ If an object has not been correctly detected.
- ▷ In thick fog, rain, spray or snowfall.
- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera and/or the windscreens is dirty or covered.
- ▷ With bright oncoming light.
- ▷ Up to 20 seconds after starting the engine using the start/stop button.
- ▷ During the calibration process of the camera immediately after the vehicle is supplied.

## Queue assistant

### Principle

In queue situations, the system controls the speed, steers automatically and stops the vehicle in the lane, as required.

Within the limits of its capability, the system automatically adapts the vehicle's speed to that of a vehicle in front of you. You can vary the distance maintained by the system between your vehicle and the vehicle in front. It is

dependent on speed for safety reasons. To maintain distance, the system automatically reduces speed, brakes slightly if necessary, and accelerates again when the vehicle in front of you starts to move more quickly.

If the vehicle ahead brakes to a standstill, and sets off again within a short time, the system can comprehend this within the given framework. Your own vehicle is braked and accelerated again automatically.

With known lane limits, the system keeps the vehicle in the lane. To do this, the system may steer automatically, for example when cornering.

## General

The queue assistant determines speed and distance from the vehicle in front, using a radar sensor and the position of the lane demarcation using a camera.

Sensors on the steering wheel detect whether the steering wheel is being touched.

The system is deactivated as soon as the steering wheel is no longer touched.

To be able to use the queue assistant, grasp the steering wheel.

When driving with gloves or protective covers attached, the contact with the steering wheel is not detectable to the sensors. In those circumstances, the system can possibly not be used.

## Notes



### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

## Functional requirements

- ▷ Driving on an approved type of road. The data on this is laid down in the navigation system. Approved types of road are motorways or roads like motorways.
- ▷ Sufficient driving lane width.
- ▷ Tracking limit on both sides is detected.
- ▷ Preceding vehicle is detected.
- ▷ Speed under 60 km/h/35 mph.
- ▷ Hands on the steering wheel.
- ▷ Sufficient turning radius.
- ▷ Driving in the centre of the lane.

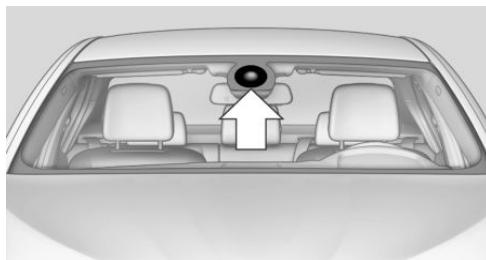
## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

Press the button	Function
	Traffic-queue assistant on/off, see page 145.
	Interrupt traffic-queue assistant, see page 145.
	Rocker switch: Hold, save, change speed, see page 139.
	Resume speed, see page 140.
	Set distance, see page 139.

## Camera

A camera is used for vehicle detection.



The camera is in the area of the base of the rear-view mirror.

Keep the windscreen clean and clear in the area in front of the rear-view mirror.

## Switching on/off and interrupting

### Switching on

 Press the button.

- ▷ Prepare the system: press once.
- ▷ Activating system:  
With ACC not activated: press rocker switch or RES button.  
With ACC activated: system is ready.
- Driving in the centre of the lane.  
The system is automatically activated below 60 km/h/35 mph.

 With ACC not activated: indicator lamp in the instrument panel is illuminated.

 With ACC activated: indicator lamp in the instrument panel is illuminated.

Traffic-queue assistant can be used.

With the traffic-queue assistant switched on, the person warning is active. The setting in the Control Display remains unchanged.

### Switching off

 Press the button.

The display is no longer illuminated. Set desired speed and distance continue to be held by ACC.

The system does not make any steering movement.

### Interrupting

 When the system is activated, press the button.

The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the brake is applied.
- ▷ At a speed above 60 km/h/35 mph.
- ▷ With only one detected lane marking.
- ▷ When leaving the motorway or roads like motorways.
- ▷ When releasing the steering wheel.
- ▷ Intervention in the steering.
- ▷ When leaving your own lane.
- ▷ When there is no vehicle travelling in front.
- ▷ With the turn indicator set.
- ▷ With too narrow a lane.
- ▷ If the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 seconds, it does not continue accelerating when the vehicle in front drives off.

 Rolling bars with a vehicle stationary:  
The system does not accelerate further.

To continue to accelerate, activate ACC by briefly depressing the accelerator pedal, RES button or rocker switch.

Press the RES button or rocker switch when stationary: if the vehicle in front moves off within 30 seconds, your vehicle accelerates automatically. Press the RES button or rocker switch again if you stop for a relatively long time.

 Flashing red and signal tone:

Traffic-queue assistant is interrupted. The system does not make any steering movement. ACC controls.

If the system conditions are met, the system is reactivated automatically.

When leaving the approved type of road, the system is first interrupted and then shuts down.

## Distance

### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you. Braking may be performed too late because of system limitations. Danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the traffic conditions attentively at all times. Adapt the distance to traffic and weather conditions, and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.◀

## Setting distance

 Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

## Vehicle distance

The selected distance to the vehicle ahead is displayed.

### Distance indicator



Distance 1



Distance 2

### Distance indicator



Distance 3

Set after switching on the system. Corresponds to approximately half of the value in the speedometer display, expressed in metres.



Distance 4



### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you. Braking may be performed too late because of system limitations. Danger of accident or damage to property. Observe the traffic conditions attentively at all times. Adapt the distance to traffic and weather conditions, and comply with the prescribed safe distance by braking if necessary.◀

## Displays in the instrument cluster

Symbol	Description
	Queue assistant and distance control ready.
	Queue assistant ready. Distance control controls at the set distance.
	Queue assistant activated. The system controls the speed and supports lane keeping.

Symbol	Description
	Rolling bars while the vehicle is in motion: speed is no longer increased by the queue assistant at 60 km/h/35 mph.
	When the speed is increased by depressing the accelerator pedal, pressing the RES button or the rocker switch, the system does not perform any more steering movements.
	Flashing red and signal tone: queue assistant is interrupted. The system does not make any steering movement. ACC controls.

## Displays on the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown on Head-Up Display.

## System limits

### Note

#### WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

## Narrow lanes

The system cannot be activated or used sensibly when driving in narrow lanes.

Do not use the system in the following situations:

- ▷ At road works.
- ▷ When establishing emergency lanes.

## Weather

In unfavourable weather or light conditions, for example during rain, snow, slush, fog or oncoming glare, detection of vehicles may deteriorate and there may be brief interruptions of already detected vehicles. Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, e.g. by braking, steering or manoeuvring.

orate and there may be brief interruptions of already detected vehicles. Pay attention when driving and respond to the prevailing traffic conditions. If necessary, intervene actively, e.g. by braking, steering or manoeuvring.

## Cruise Control

### Principle

System keeps to speed set using buttons on steering wheel. On downhill gradients, the system will brake the vehicle if the braking action of the engine alone is insufficient.

### General

Characteristics of Cruise Control may change in certain areas depending on vehicle setting.

### Notes

#### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

#### WARNING

Using the system in the following situations can lead to an increased danger of accident:

- ▷ On stretches with many corners and bends.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ If the road is icy, if there is fog, snow, rain or a loose road surface.

Danger of accident or damage to property. Only use the system if it is possible to drive at a constant speed.◀

## Overview

### Buttons on the steering wheel

Press the button	Function
	Cruise Control on, off, interrupt, see page 148.
	Resume speed, see page 149.
	Rocker switch: change, hold or set speed, see page 148.

## Controls

### Switching on

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The speedometer marker is set to the current speed.

Cruise Control can be used.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

### Switching off

Press the button on the steering wheel.

► When activated: press twice.

► When interrupted: press once.

The indicators turn off. The saved desired speed is deleted.

### Interrupting

When the system is activated, press the button on the steering wheel.

The system interrupts automatically in the following situations:

- If the brake is applied.
- If the clutch is depressed for a few seconds or released with no gear engaged.

- If too high a gear has been engaged for the speed.
- If selector lever position N is engaged.
- If DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
- If DSC intervenes.

### Maintaining, saving, changing speed

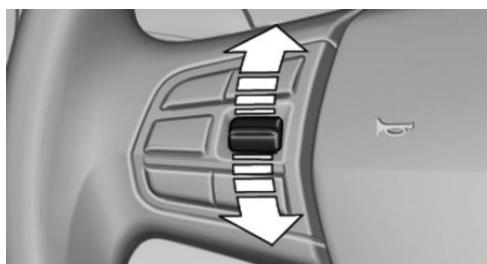
#### Note



#### WARNING

The desired speed can be inadvertently set incorrectly or called up. Danger of accidents. Adapt the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

### Maintaining speed, saving



During the interruption, press the rocker switch.

With the system switched on, the driven speed is maintained and saved as the desired speed.

This is shown in the speedometer and briefly in the instrument cluster, see page 149.

DSC is switched on if necessary.

### Changing speed

Press the rocker switch repeatedly upwards or downwards until the desired speed is set.

With the system active, the speed that is then shown is set and will be achieved on a clear road.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed lightly up to the resistance point, the de-

sired speed is increased or decreased by approximately 1 km/h, 1 mph.

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed beyond the resistance point, the desired speed is increased or decreased to the next multiple of 10 km/h on the speedometer display.

The maximum speed which can be set depends on the vehicle.

- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch until the resistance point is reached and holding accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without pressing the accelerator pedal.

The speed is maintained after letting go of the rocker switch. Pressing beyond the resistance point results in greater vehicle acceleration.

## Call up desired speed



Press the button on the steering wheel.

The saved speed is regained and maintained.

## Displays in the instrument cluster

### Indicator light



Depending on the equipment the indicator light in the instrument cluster shows whether the system is switched on.

### Desired speed



- ▷ Marker illuminates green: the system is active.
- ▷ Marker illuminates orange: the system is interrupted.
- ▷ Marker does not illuminate: the system is inactive.

## Brief status display



Selected desired speed.

If no speed is displayed, the conditions required for operation may not be fulfilled at the moment.

## Displays on the Head-Up Display

Some information from the system can also be shown on Head-Up Display.

## Park Distance Control PDC

### Principle

PDC supports you with parking. Slowly approaching an object in behind, or with front PDC, in front of, your vehicle is signalled by means of:

- ▷ Acoustic signals.
- ▷ Visual display.

### General

Ultrasonic sensors in each bumper measure the distance.

The range is approximately 2 m, 6 ft depending on obstacle and environment.

An acoustic warning is only issued under the following circumstances:

- ▷ At the front sensors and at the two corner sensors at the rear at approximately 60 cm, 24 in.
- ▷ At the central sensors at the rear at approximately 1.5 m, 5 ft.
- ▷ If there is a collision risk.

### Notes



#### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a rea-

sonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀



### WARNING

If the vehicle is travelling at high speed when PDC is activated, there may be a delayed warning because of physical conditions. Danger of injury or damage to property. Avoid approaching an object at speed. Avoid moving off at speed while PDC is not yet active.◀

## Overview

### With front PDC: button in vehicle



Park Distance Control PDC

### Ultrasonic sensors



Ultrasonic sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

### Functional requirements

To ensure correct functionality:

- ▶ Do not cover sensors, for example by stickers, bicycle rack.
- ▶ Keep sensors clean and free from ice.

For cleaning: do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaners for an extended period of time and maintain a distance of at least 30 cm, 12 in.

## Switching on/off

### Automatic switching on

PDC switches on automatically in the following situations:

- ▶ If selector lever position R is engaged while the engine is running.  
The rear-view camera also switches on.
- ▶ With front PDC equipment: if obstacles behind or in front of the vehicle are detected by PDC and the speed is slower than approximately 4 km/h, approximately 2.5 mph.

The automatic switching on can be switched off for known obstacles:

1. "Settings"
2. "Parking"
3. Select the setting.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

### Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

### With front PDC: switching on/off manually



Press the button.

- ▶ On: LED is illuminated.
- ▶ Off: LED turns off.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the button.

## Display

### Acoustic signals

An intermittent sound respectively indicates the position of an object as the vehicle ap-

proaches it. For instance, if an object is identified to the rear left of the vehicle, the acoustic signal sounds from the rear left loudspeaker.

The shorter the distance to an object becomes, the shorter the intervals become.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approximately 25 cm, 10 in, a continuous tone sounds.

With front PDC: if there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous tone sounds.

The acoustic signal is switched off when selector lever position P is engaged on the Steptronic transmission.

## Volume control

It is possible to set the ratio between the volume of the PDC acoustic signal and the volume of the Entertainment.

1. "Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings"
2. "Sound"
3. "Volume settings"
4. "PDC"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached.
6. Press the Controller.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

## Visual warning

When the vehicle is approaching an object it will be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are further away from the vehicle will appear on the Control Display before an acoustic signal is given.

A display is superimposed as soon as PDC is activated.

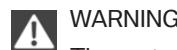
Recording range of sensors is shown in colours green, yellow and red.

If the reversing camera image is displayed, it is possible to change over to PDC:

"Rear view camera"

## System limits

### Note



### WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

## With a trailer or when the trailer socket is occupied

The rear sensors are unable to perform any meaningful measurements. Thus, they are switched off.

A Check Control message is displayed if corresponding equipment is fitted.

## Limits of the ultrasound measurement

Detection of objects might not be possible if the limits of the physical ultrasound measurement are exceeded, such as for instance at the following times:

- ▷ With small children and animals.
- ▷ With persons with certain clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ With external disruption to the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.
- ▷ If the sensors are dirty, iced-up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ In certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With trailer noses and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ For higher, protruding objects, for example projecting walls or loads.

- ▶ For objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▶ For objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▶ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▶ With projecting transported load.

Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.

## False alarms

Under the following conditions, PDC can issue a warning although there is no obstacle in the detection range:

- ▶ In heavy rain.
- ▶ If the sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- ▶ If the sensors are covered with snow.
- ▶ On rough road surfaces.
- ▶ On uneven ground, for example speed bumps.
- ▶ In large, rectangular buildings with smooth walls, for example underground car parks.
- ▶ In washing bays and car washes.
- ▶ Due to dense exhaust gases.
- ▶ If the cover of the trailer tow hitch is incorrectly seated.
- ▶ Due to other ultrasonic sources, for example sweeping machines, steam-jet cleaners or neon lights.

The functional disruption is reported by an alternating continuous tone between the front and rear loudspeakers. As soon as the disruption by other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is fully functional again.

To reduce false alarms, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary, for example in automatic car washes, see page 150.

## Malfunction

A Check Control message is shown.

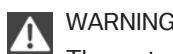
PDC has failed. Have the system checked.

## Rear-view camera

### Principle

The rear-view camera offers assistance when reversing into a parking space or manoeuvring. To achieve this, the area behind the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

### Note



#### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Danger of accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Additionally, look directly to check the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle and intervene actively in the corresponding situations.◀

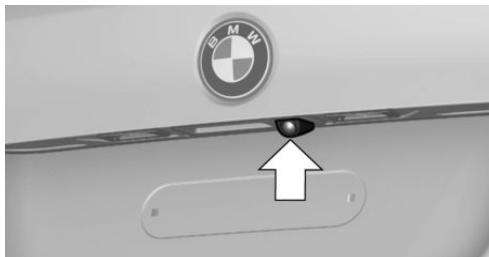
### Overview

#### Button in the vehicle



#### Rear-view camera

## Camera



The lens of the camera is located in the handle strip of the tailgate. Dirt can impair the quality of the picture.

Clean the lens of the camera, see page 246.

## Switching on/off

### Automatic activation

While the engine is running, engage selector lever position R.

### Automatic switching off when moving forwards

The system switches off when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on if necessary.

### Switching on/off manually



Press the button.

- ▷ On: LED is illuminated.
- ▷ Off: LED turns off.

PDC is displayed on the Control Display.

The image from the rear-view camera is shown when the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the button.

### Switching the view via iDrive

With PDC activated:



The image from the rear-view camera is displayed.

## Display on the Control Display

### Operating requirements

- ▷ The rear-view camera is switched on.
- ▷ The tailgate is completely closed.

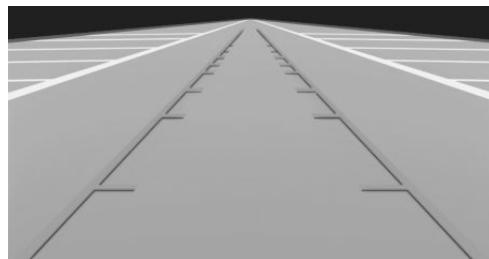
### Activating assistance functions

A number of assistance functions can be active simultaneously.

The zoom function for towing a trailer can only be activated individually.

- ▷ Parking aid lines.
  - "Parking guidance lines"
  - Driving lane and turning circle lines are displayed.
- ▷ Obstacle marking.
  - "Obstacle marking"
  - Spatially shaped markings are displayed.
- ▷ Trailer tow hitch
  - "Towbar zoom"
  - The zoom to the trailer tow hitch is displayed.

### Driving lane lines



Driving lane lines can appear in the image from the rear-view camera.

The driving lane lines help to estimate the required space when parking and manoeuvring on a level road surface.

The driving lane lines are dependent on the current steering angle and are continuously adapted to steering wheel movements.

## Turning circle lines



The turning circle lines can only be shown in the image from the rear-view camera together with driving lane lines.

The turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road surface.

When the steering wheel is turned to a certain extent, only a turning circle line is shown.



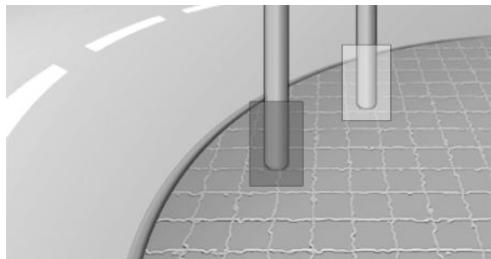
The distance between the trailer and the trailer tow hitch can be estimated with the aid of two static circular segments.

A docking-on line dependent on the steering angle helps to aim at the trailer with your trailer tow hitch.

The zoom function can be enabled when the camera is switched on.

Displaying the trailer tow hitch via iDrive, see page [153](#).

## Obstacle marking

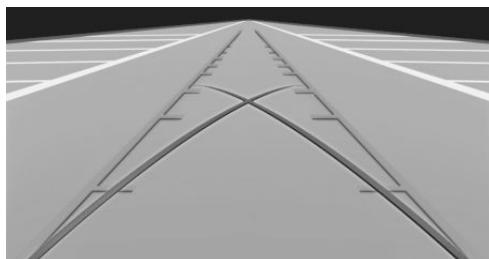


Obstacle markings can be shown in the image from the rear-view camera.

The colour incrementation corresponds to the markings of PDC.

## Parking with the help of driving lane and turning circle lines

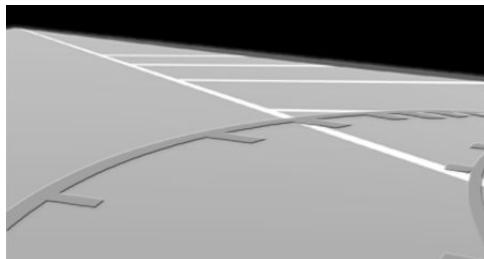
1. Position the vehicle so that the turning circle lines are within the limit of the parking space.



## Gesture to trailer tow hitch

To facilitate connecting up a trailer, the picture area around the trailer tow hitch can be zoomed.

- Turn the steering wheel so that the driving lane line covers the corresponding turning circle line.



## Display settings

### Brightness

With rear-view camera switched on:

- Select the symbol.
- Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

### Contrast

With rear-view camera switched on:

- Select the symbol.
- Turn the controller until the desired setting is reached and press the controller.

## System limits

### Detection of objects

Very low obstacles and higher, protruding objects such as ledges cannot be detected by the system.

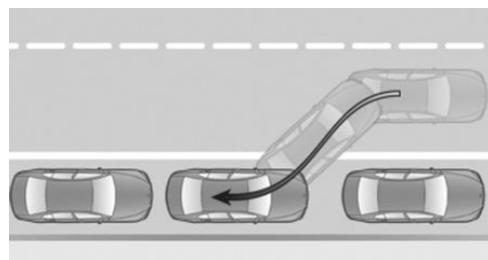
Assistance functions also consider data from the PDC.

Follow notes in the PDC chapter, see page 149.

The objects shown on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to objects on the display.

## Park Assistant

### Principle



The system supports you when parking in parallel to the road.

Handling of the Park Assistant is divided into three steps:

- ▷ Switching on and activating.
- ▷ Parking space search.
- ▷ Parking.

The status of the system and necessary action instructions are shown on the Control Display.

Ultrasonic sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.

The park assistant calculates the ideal parking line and takes over steering during the process of parking.

### Notes

The park assistant incorporates Park Distance Control, PDC, see page 149.

When parking up, also follow the visual and audible information and notes of the PDC, the Park Assistant and the rear-view camera, and respond accordingly.

Loud sound sources outside or inside the vehicle can drown out the PDC signal.



### WARNING

The system does not take your personal responsibility from you when you are estimating the traffic situation. Due to limits of the system, it cannot respond independently in a reasonable way in all traffic conditions. Danger of

accidents. Adapt driving style to the traffic conditions. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

#### **WARNING**

When the trailer tow hitch is used, the Park Assistant could cause damage if its sensors are obstructed. Danger of accident or damage to property. Do not use the Park Assistant when towing a trailer or using the trailer tow hitch, for example with a bicycle carrier.◀

#### **ATTENTION**

The Park Assistant may steer across curbs or up onto curbs. Danger of damage to property. Observe the traffic situation and intervene actively if the situation warrants it.◀

An engine stopped by the Auto Start Stop function is automatically started by activating the Park Assistant.

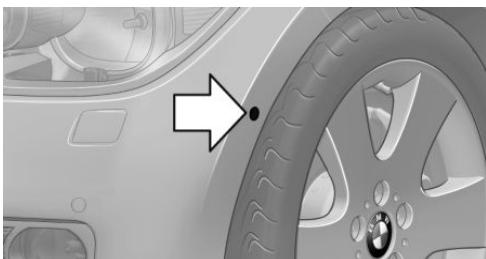
## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



 Park Assistant

### Ultrasonic sensors



Ultrasonic sensors to measure parking spaces are located on side of vehicle.

To ensure correct functionality:

- ▷ Keep sensors clean and free from ice.
- ▷ Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaners for an extended period of time and maintain a distance of at least 30 cm, 12 in.
- ▷ Do not stick things onto the sensors.

### Requirements

#### To measure parking spaces

- ▷ When the vehicle is moving forwards up to approximately 35 km/h, 22 mph.
- ▷ Maximum distance to the row of parking vehicles: 1.5 m, 5 ft.

#### Suitable parking space

- ▷ Gap behind an object that is at least 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft long.
- ▷ Gap between two objects, each of which are at least 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft long.
- ▷ Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approximately 1.0 m, approximately 3.3 ft.
- ▷ Minimum depth: approximately 1.5 m, 5 ft.

#### For the process of parking

- ▷ Doors and tailgate closed.
- ▷ Parking brake released.

- ▷ You must indicate accordingly when parking into parking spaces on the driver's side.

## Switching on and activating

### Switching on with the button

 Press the button.

LED is illuminated.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed on the Control Display.

 Park Assistant is automatically activated.

### Switching on with the reverse gear

Engage reverse gear.

The current status of the parking space search is displayed on the Control Display.

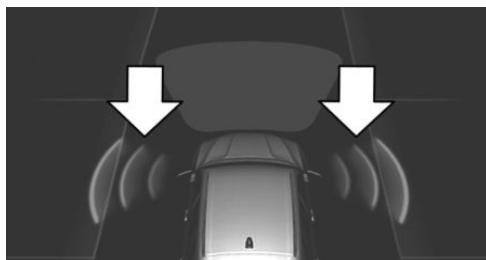
To activate:  "Park Assist"

### Display on the Control Display

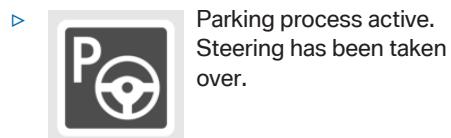
#### System is activated/deactivated

Symbol	Meaning
	Grey: system not available. White: system available but not activated.
	System is activated.

#### Parking space search and status of the system



- ▷ Coloured symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle display. Park Assistant is activated and parking space search is active.
- ▷ Suitable parking spaces are shown on the Control Display on the edge of the roadway next to the vehicle symbol. With active parking assist, the suitable parking spaces are highlighted in colour.



- ▷ The parking space search is always active with slow straight forward driving, even with deactivated system. With deactivated system, the displays on the Control Display are shown grey.

### Parking with the Park Assistant

1.  Press the button and engage reverse gear to switch on the Park Assistant, see page 157. Activate Park Assistant if necessary.

 Park Assistant is activated.

2. Drive past the line of parked vehicles at a speed up to approximately 35 km/h, approximately 22 mph and at a distance of maximum 1.5 m, approximately 5 ft.

The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are shown on the Control Display, see page 157.

3. Follow the instructions on the display.  
To achieve an optimum parking position, wait for the automatic steering process after changing gear at standstill.  
The end of the parking process is displayed on the display.
4. Straighten up the parking position, if applicable.

## Cancelling manually

You can cancel the Park Assistant at any time:

- ▷  "Park Assist"
- ▷  Press the button.

## Cancelling automatically

The system automatically cancels in the following situations:

- ▷ When holding firmly onto the steering wheel or even if steering is done.
- ▷ When selecting gear, which does not correspond to the information on the display.
- ▷ At speeds over approximately 10 km/h, approximately 6 mph.
- ▷ Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
- ▷ When a maximum number of parking attempts or parking time is exceeded.
- ▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC shows gaps are too small.
- ▷ When changing to other functions on the Control Display.

A Check Control message is shown.

## Continuing

You can continue a cancelled parking process, if applicable.

To do this, reactivate the Park Assistant, see page 157, and follow the instructions on the display.

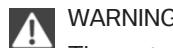
## Switching off

The system can be deactivated by:

- ▷  Press the button.
- ▷ Switch the ignition off.

## System limits

### Note



### WARNING

The system may respond incorrectly or not at all due to limits of the system. Danger of accident or damage to property. Comply with the notes on the limits of the system and intervene actively if necessary.◀

### No parking support

The Park Assistant does not support in the following situations:

- ▷ On sharp bends.
- ▷ When towing a trailer.

### Restrictions of the function

The function can be restricted, for example in the following situations:

- ▷ When on uneven road surfaces, for example gravel roads.
- ▷ On slippery ground.
- ▷ On steep upward or downward gradients.
- ▷ If leaves have collected or snow has drifted or been piled up in the parking space.
- ▷ With emergency wheel fitted.
- ▷ At ditches or sudden drops, for example a quayside.

### Limits of the ultrasound measurement

Detection of objects might not be possible if the limits of the physical ultrasound measurement are exceeded, such as for instance at the following times:

- ▷ With small children and animals.
- ▷ With persons with certain clothing, for example a coat.
- ▷ With external disruption to the ultrasound, for example by passing vehicles or loud machines.

- ▷ If the sensors are dirty, iced-up, damaged or incorrectly adjusted.
- ▷ In certain weather conditions, for example high humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
- ▷ With trailer noses and tow hitches of other vehicles.
- ▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- ▷ With moving objects.
- ▷ For higher, protruding objects, for example projecting walls or loads.
- ▷ For objects with corners and sharp edges.
- ▷ For objects with fine surfaces or structures, for example fences.
- ▷ For objects with porous surfaces.
- ▷ With projecting transported load.

Low objects already indicated, such as kerbs, may enter the sensors' blind areas before or after a continuous tone is given.

In some cases, parking spaces may be detected that are not suitable or suitable parking spaces may not be detected.

## **Malfunction**

A Check Control message is shown.

The Park Assistant has failed. Have the system checked.

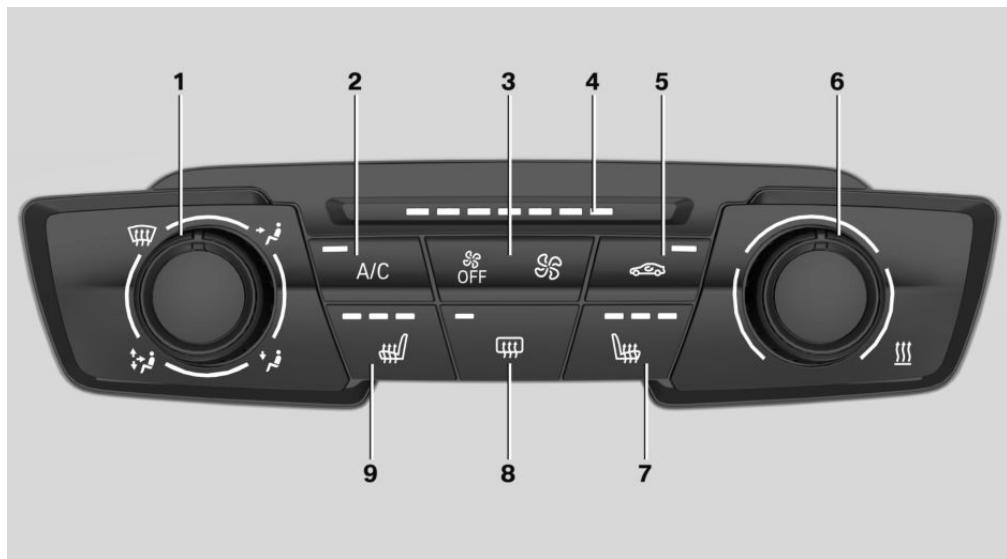
# Climate

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the se-

lected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Air conditioning



- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <b>1</b> Air distribution      | <b>6</b> Temperature                            |
| <b>2</b> Cooling function      | <b>7</b> Seat heating, right <a href="#">54</a> |
| <b>3</b> Air flow              | <b>8</b> Heated rear window                     |
| <b>4</b> Air flow display      | <b>9</b> Seat heating, left <a href="#">54</a>  |
| <b>5</b> Recirculated-air mode |   |

### Air conditioning functions in detail

#### Switching system on/off

##### Switching on

Press any key, except

- ▷ Rear window heating.
- ▷ Seat heating.

## Switching off



Hold down left button until the control shuts down.

## Temperature



Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

## Cooling function

Interior air is cooled and dried, then reheated to suit the temperature setting.

The interior can only be cooled when the engine is running.



Press the button.

The cooling function is switched on or off.

Depending on weather conditions, the windscreen and side windows may mist over for a short time when the engine is started.

Condensation, see page 185, develops in the air conditioning and leaks underneath the vehicle.

## Recirculated-air mode

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.



Press button repeatedly to call up an operating mode:

- ▷ LED off: ambient air is constantly entering the car.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the ambient air supply is permanently shut off.

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off after a given time depending on the ambient conditions, to avoid condensation.

Continuous recirculated-air mode deteriorates the air quality in the interior and condensation on the windows increases.

In the event of condensation, switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow if necessary.

## Adjusting the air flow manually



Press left or right side button: reduce or increase air flow.

The intensity is shown by the LEDs. The highest stage is seven illuminated LEDs.

The air flow of the air conditioning system is reduced as necessary to save the battery.

## Adjusting the air distribution manually



Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- ▷ 🌄 Window glass.
- ▷ 🚶 Upper body area.
- ▷ 🚶 Footwell.
- ▷ 🚶 Windows, upper body area and footwell.

## Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Direct air distribution to windows, increase quantity of air and temperature then switch on with cooling function as needed.

## Rear window heating



Press the button.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

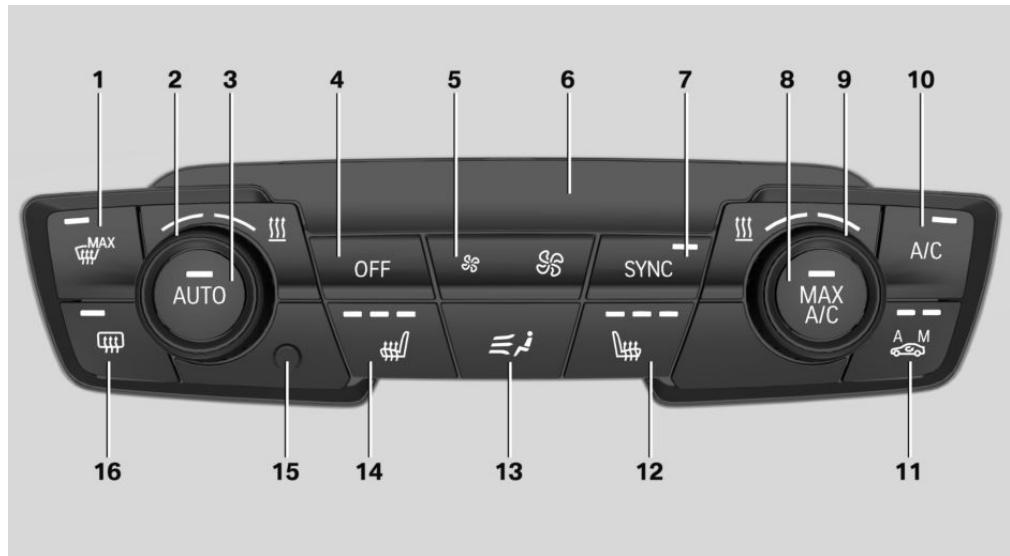
Press and hold the button for more than 3 seconds for permanent activation. Press the button again to deactivate.

## Microfilter

In outside and recirculated-air mode, the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

This filter should be changed during maintenance on your vehicle, see page 222.

## Automatic air conditioning



- 1 Defrosting windows and removing condensation
- 2 Temperature, left
- 3 AUTO program
- 4 Switching the system off
- 5 Air flow, AUTO intensity
- 6 Display
- 7 SYNC program
- 8 Maximum cooling effect

- 9 Temperature, right
- 10 Cooling function
- 11 AUC/recirculated-air mode
- 12 Seat heating, right **54**
- 13 Air distribution
- 14 Seat heating, left **54**
- 15 Interior temperature sensor — never cover
- 16 Rear window heating

### Air conditioning functions in detail

#### Switching system on/off

#### Switch on

Press any key, except:

- ▷ SYNC-Program.
- ▷ Heated rear window
- ▷ Seat heating

## Switch off



Press the button.

System is set to lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

## Temperature



Turn the wheel to select the desired temperature.

The air flows from the side nozzles for the upper body area. Therefore open the side nozzles.

The function is available through an outside temperature of approximately 0 °C/32 °F and with the engine running.

The air flow can be adapted when the program is active.

## AUTO program



Press the button.

The air flow, air distribution and temperature are automatically regulated.

Depending on the selected temperature, intensity AUTO program and external influences, the air is directed towards the windscreen, side windows, upper body, and into the footwell.

The cooling function, see page 163, is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

A condensation sensor also controls the program so that condensation is avoided as much as possible.

## Intensity of AUTO program

When AUTO program is switched on, automatic control of the intensity can be changed.



Press left or right side button: reduce or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

## Automatic air recirculation control, AUC/recirculated-air mode

If the air outside the vehicle has an unpleasant odour or contains pollutants, the supply to the interior of the vehicle can be shut off. The air inside the vehicle is then recirculated.

## Cooling function

Interior air is cooled and dried, then reheated to suit the temperature setting.

The interior can only be cooled when the engine is running.



Press the button.

The cooling function is switched on or off.

Depending on weather conditions, the windscreen and side windows may mist over for a short time when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically in the AUTO program.

When using the automatic air conditioning, condensation, see page 185, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

## Maximum cooling effect



Press the button.



Press button repeatedly to call up an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: ambient air is constantly entering the car.
- ▷ Left-hand LED on, AUC mode: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts it out automatically.
- ▷ Right-hand LED on, recirculated-air mode: the ambient air supply is permanently shut off.

The recirculated-air mode automatically switches off at low outside temperatures after a given time, to avoid condensation.

Continuous recirculated-air mode deteriorates the air quality in the interior and condensation on the windows increases.

If there is condensation on the window, switch off recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button to use the condensation sensor. Ensure that air can flow towards the windscreens.

## Adjusting the air flow manually

To be able to adjust the air flow manually, first switch off the AUTO program.



Press left or right side button: reduce or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display for automatic air conditioning.

In order to protect the battery the air flow rate of the automatic air conditioning is reduced, if necessary.

## Adjusting the air distribution manually



Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body area and footwell.
- ▷ Footwell.
- ▷ Windows and footwell.
- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Windows and upper body area.

▷ Upper body area.

▷ Windows, upper body area and footwell.

If there is condensation on the window, press the AUTO button in order to use the condensation sensor.

## SYNC program



Press the button.

Current temperature adjustment on the driver's side is transferred to the front passenger's side.

The program is switched off if the setting is changed on the front passenger side.

## Defrosting windows and removing condensation



Press the button.

This removes ice and condensation quickly from the windscreens and the front side windows.

To do this, point the side nozzles at the side windows if necessary.

The air flow can be adapted when the program is active.

If there is condensation on the window, switch on the cooling function as well or press the AUTO button to use the condensation sensor.

## Rear window heating



Press the button.

The rear window heating is switched off automatically after a certain period of time.

Press and hold the button for more than 3 seconds for permanent activation. Press the button again to deactivate.

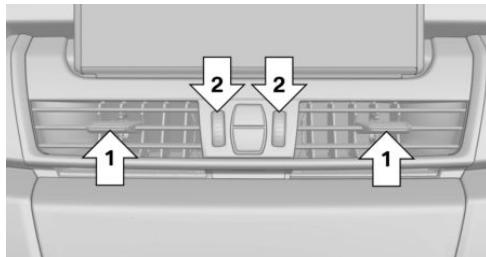
## Micro/activated charcoal filter

In outside and recirculated-air mode, the microfilter/activated carbon filter filters dust, pollen and harmful gases from the air.

This filter should be changed during maintenance, see page 222, on the vehicle.

## Ventilation

### Ventilation at front

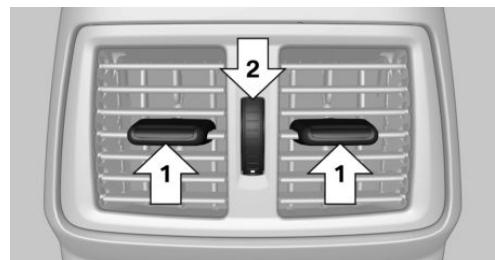


- ▷ Lever to change the direction in which air flows, arrows 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheels to open and close the air outlets continuously, arrow 2.

### Setting the ventilation

- ▷ Ventilation for cooling:  
Adjust the side nozzles so that air is directed towards you, for example if the vehicle's interior has become hot.
- ▷ Draught-free ventilation:  
Adjust the side nozzles so that the air flows past you.

### Ventilation in rear passenger compartment



- ▷ Lever to change the direction in which air flows, arrows 1.
- ▷ Knurled wheel to open and close the side nozzles continuously, arrow 2.

### Independent ventilation

#### Principle

The independent ventilation system ventilates the passenger compartment and lowers its temperature under some circumstances.

The system can be switched on and off at any ambient temperature either directly or via two preselected switch-on times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Open the ventilation vents so the air can flow out.

#### Switching on/off directly

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate aux. ventilation"

symbol on automatic air conditioning flashes when system is switched on.

## Preselecting the switch-on time

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Start time 1:" or "Start time 2:"
4. Set desired time.

## Activating the switch-on time

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate start time 1" or "Activate start time 2"

 Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system is illuminated when the switch-on time is active.

 Symbol on the automatic air conditioning system flashes when the system has cut in.

The system switches on within the next 24 hours only. Afterwards, it must be reactivated.

# Interior equipment

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Sun visor

### Glare protection

Fold the sun visor downwards or upwards.

### Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is situated in the sun visor behind a cover. The mirror light switches on when the cover is opened.

## Ashtray/lighter

### Ashtrays

#### Opening



The ashtray can be inserted into the cu-pholder.

### Emptying

Lift out the insert.

### Lighter



#### WARNING

Contacting the hot heating element or the hot fitting of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can catch fire if the lighter falls down or is held against corresponding objects. Danger of fire and injury. Grip the cigarette lighter by the handle. Make sure that children cannot use the lighter and burn themselves, for example by taking the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle.◀



#### ATTENTION

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. Danger of damage to property. After using the socket, put the lighter or socket cover back on.◀



The cigarette lighter is located in the centre console.



Press in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed when it pops back out.

## Connecting electrical appliances

### Information



#### ATTENTION

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can operate with high voltages and high currents, which can overload or damage the 12 volt on-board network. Danger of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.◀



#### ATTENTION

If metallic objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. Danger of damage to property. After using the socket, put the lighter or socket cover back on.◀

### Power sockets

#### General

Cigarette lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical devices when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

#### Note

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 Watt at 12 Volt.

To avoid damage to the socket, do not insert an incompatible plug.

#### Front centre console



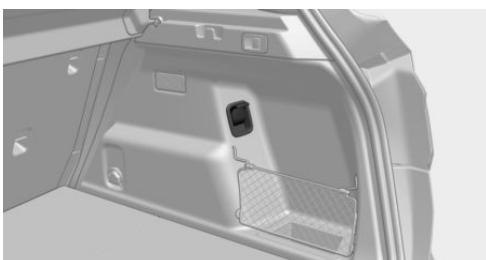
Remove the cover or lighter.

#### Rear centre console



Remove the cover.

#### Inside the boot



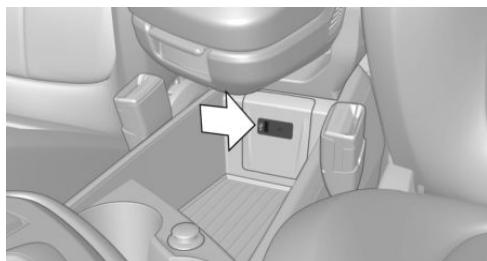
Socket is on the right in the boot.

### USB interface

#### Principle

Port for USB mediums with music files and for importing and exporting data, for example for personal profile settings.

## Overview



The USB interface is located between the front seats.

## Notes

When connecting, bear the following in mind:

- ▷ Do not insert the plug forcibly in the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect any devices such as fans or lights to the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect up USB hard drives.
- ▷ Do not use the USB audio interface for charging external devices.

## Fold-down tables in rear

### General

Each backrest of the front seats incorporates a fold-down table.

Fold down the fold-down tables again after use.

The maximum load on fold-down tables is 6 kg/13 lb. If overloaded, the fold-down tables fold down to avoid damage.

### Notes

#### **WARNING**

Parts of the body can be trapped when folding up and down and adjusting the height of the fold-down table. Danger of injury. When folding up and down and adjusting, make sure

that the area of movement of the fold-down table is free.◀

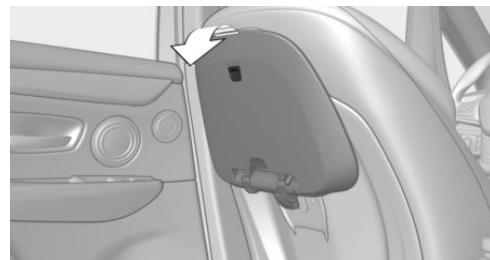
#### **WARNING**

A folded down fold-down table protrudes into the vehicle interior and can lead to injuries in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvres. Objects on the table can be thrown into the interior during the journey. Danger of injury. Do not fold down or use fold-down tables during the journey.◀

#### **WARNING**

Adjusting the fold-down table can result in objects falling down, and the table can be pushed out of the rail. Danger of injury or damage to property. When adjusting, remove all objects such as beverages from the fold-down table. Also, do not push the fold-down table beyond the point of resistance when adjusting.◀

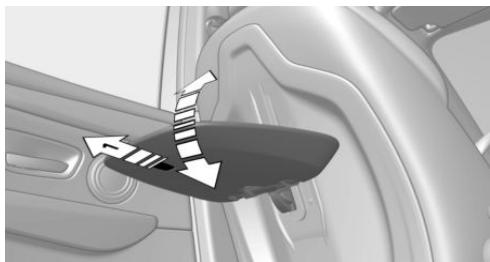
## Folding down



Fold down the fold-down table against the resistance.

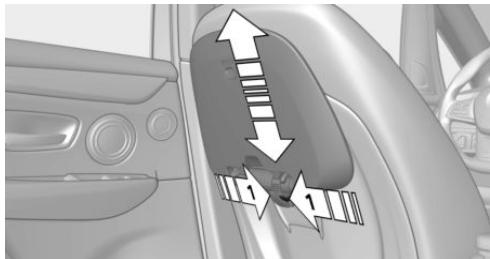
### Adjusting the angle

The fold-down table can be adjusted to the angle of the front seat backrests.



Pull the lever into the direction of the table edge, arrow 1, and adjust the desired angle.

## Adjusting height



Push buttons on both sides, arrow 1, and set required height.

## Folding up

1. Press the buttons on both sides and push the fold-down table into the lowest position until it engages.
2. Pull the lever towards the edge of the table and fold the fold-down table up.

## Removing

The fold-down table can be removed for cleaning.

1. Press the buttons on both sides and push the fold-down table up beyond the point of resistance.
2. Remove the fold-down table.

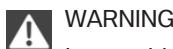
## Boot

### Boot cover

#### General

The boot cover is raised by opening the tailgate.

#### Note



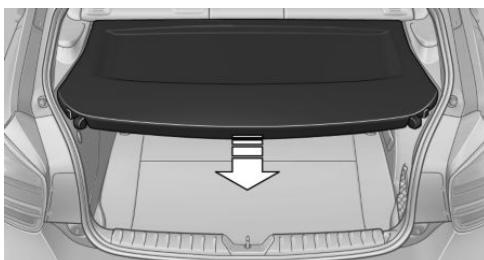
#### WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the interior.◀

## Removing

The cover can be removed for stowing bulky items.

1. Holding straps can be suspended on the tailgate.
2. Lift cover and remove towards the rear.



## Inserting

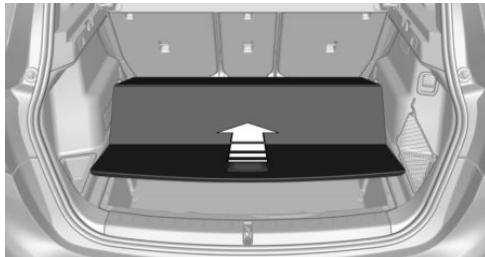
1. Put cover into the holders.
2. Hang holding straps on.

## Boot floor

### General

The boot floor can be stood up or removed for carrying bulky luggage.

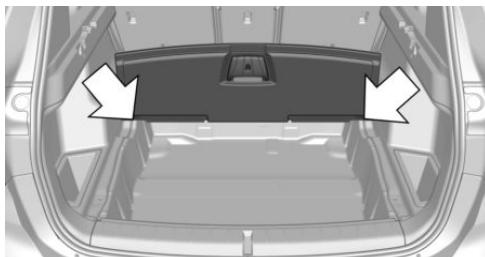
### Opening the boot floor



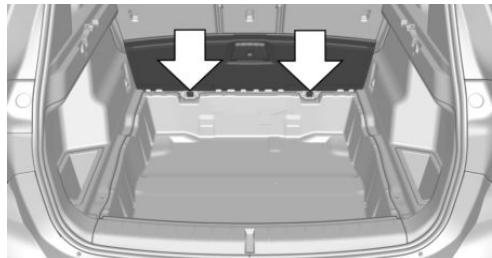
To open, lift boot floor slightly and push forwards.

### Standing up the boot floor

The boot floor can be stood up in two positions.



Push the boot floor forward until it stops.



Push the boot floor completely forward to the seats.

### Removing floor of boot

1. Open boot floor.
2. Remove the boot floor with both hands.

### Inserting the boot floor

1. Insert boot floor at rear of back seat backrests.
2. Close boot floor.

Make sure that the boot floor is engaged.

## Expanding the boot

### Principle

Boot can be enlarged by adjusting loading position or folding down rear seat backrests.

The rear seat backrest is split 40–20–40. Each side or the centre section can be folded down separately.

In addition, front passenger seat backrest can be folded down.

### Notes

#### WARNING

Risk of trapping when folding down the rear backrest. Danger of injury or damage to property. Before folding down, make sure that the movement area of the rear backrest is clear.◀



### WARNING

If the seat adjustment or child seat installation is incorrect, the stability of the child restraint system will be restricted or rendered ineffective. Danger of injury or life. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly positioned against the backrest. In all relevant backrests, adapt the backrest angle if possible and set the seats correctly. Make sure that the seats and their backrests are correctly engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints, or remove them.◀



### WARNING

Unsecured cargo can be thrown into the interior due to an unlocked backrest, for example in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Make sure that the locking mechanism engages when folding back the backrest.◀



### WARNING

The backrest can unexpectedly move during the journey due to unintentional unlocking of the rear backrests via the loops. Danger of injury. Do not attach objects to the loops for unlocking the rear backrests.◀

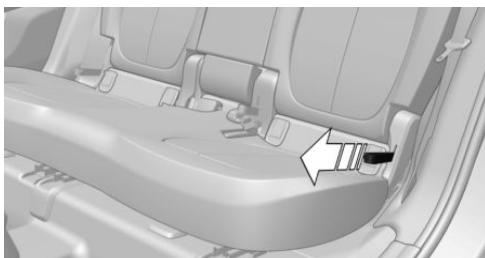
## Loading position

### Principle

The rear seat backrest can be placed in an upright position to expand the boot.

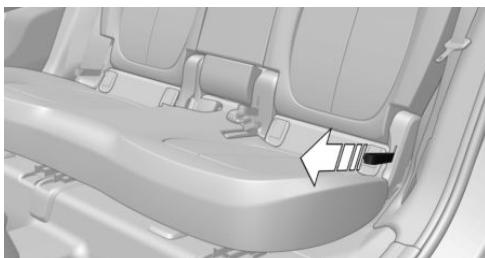
Each backrest can be folded down separately to any of several different angles.

### Setting loading position



Pull loop and remove pressure on backrest as required.

### Folding rear seat backrest down manually



Pull loop. The backrest folds forward.

### Folding rear backrest down electrically



Pull switch in the boot.

Left switch: left and middle backrests fold forwards.

Right switch: right backrest folds forwards.

## Folding back backrest

Fold backrest fully backwards and lock.

## Folding front passenger seat backrest down



### WARNING

If the backrest of the front passenger seat is folded down, the protective effect for the rear seats is lost in the event of an accident. Danger of injury. Do not occupy the seat behind the front passenger seat and the middle rear seat during the journey if the backrest of the front passenger seat is folded down.◀



### ATTENTION

If the backrest of the front passenger seat is folded forward, the seat can be damaged by the front passenger airbag in the event of an accident. Danger of damage to property. Deactivate the front passenger airbag if the backrest of the front passenger seat is folded forward.◀

Deactivate the front passenger airbag, see page 113.



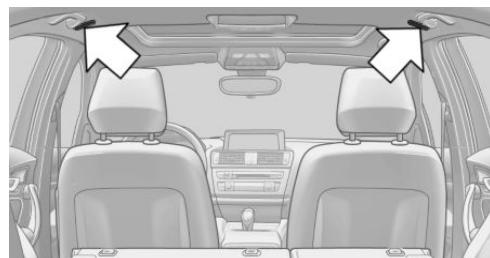
Pull the lever. The backrest folds forward.

## Luggage net

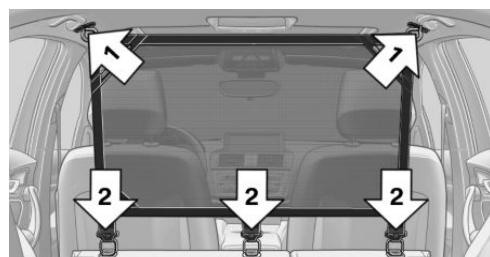
### Luggage net, large

Install the large luggage net behind the front seats with the rear backrest folded down.

1. Fold down rear backrests forwards, see page 171.
2. Fold up cover caps up on the roof frame until they engage.



3. Insert both upper fastening pins of the luggage net into the brackets until they stop, arrow 1, and push forwards.



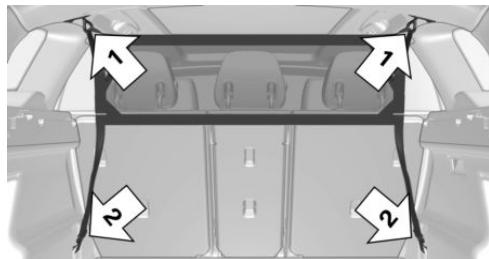
4. Hang the luggage net with the three lower hooks into the three eyes on the folded rear backrest, arrows 2, raise the rear backrests a little to do this.

### Luggage net, small

Install the small luggage net behind the second row of seats with the rear backrest in upright position.

1. Remove the boot cover.

2. Insert both upper fastening pins of the luggage net into the brackets until they stop, arrow 1, and push forwards.



3. Hang the luggage net with the two lower hooks into the respective upper lashing eyes in the boot, arrows 2.

## Ski and snowboard bag

The ski and snowboard bag is located in a protective sleeve in the boot.

Follow the installation and operating instructions enclosed in the protective sleeve.

# Storage compartments

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Notes



### WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres.  
Danger of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the interior.◀



### ATTENTION

Anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. Danger of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip mats.◀

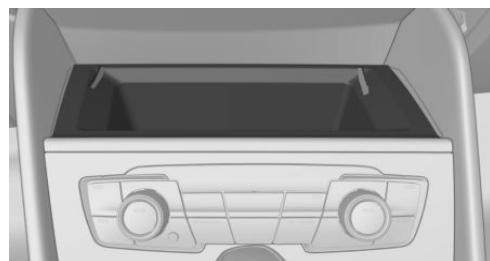
## Storage options in the interior

The following storage options are located in the interior:

- ▷ Storage compartment in front centre console, see page 175.
- ▷ Large storage compartment in centre console, see page 176.
- ▷ Glove box on the passenger side, see page 176.

- ▷ Glove box on the driver's side, see page 176.
- ▷ Pockets in the doors, see page 176.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the centre armrest, see page 176.
- ▷ Cupholder, see page 177.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the centre console in the back, see page 177.
- ▷ Storage compartments in boot, see page 178.
- ▷ Further compartments in the interior, see page 178

## Storage compartment in front centre console



There is a storage compartment in the front of the centre console.

## Large storage compartment in centre console



## Glove box

### Front passenger's side

#### Note

##### WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box can be thrown into the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.◀

#### Opening



Pull the handle.

The lighting in the glove box comes on.

#### Closing

Fold lid down.

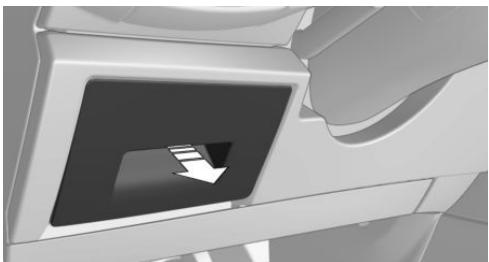
### Driver's side

#### Note

##### WARNING

The glove box projects into the interior when it is opened. Objects in the glove box can be thrown into the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Immediately close the glove box after using it.◀

#### Opening



Pull the handle.

#### Closing

Fold lid down.

## Pockets in the doors

##### WARNING

Fragile objects, for example glass bottles, can break in the event of an accident. Shards can spread throughout the interior. Danger of injury. Do not store any fragile objects in the interior.◀

## Centre armrest

### Front

There is a storage compartment in the centre armrest between the front seats.

## Opening



Press the button, arrow 1, and fold the centre armrest upwards, arrow 2.

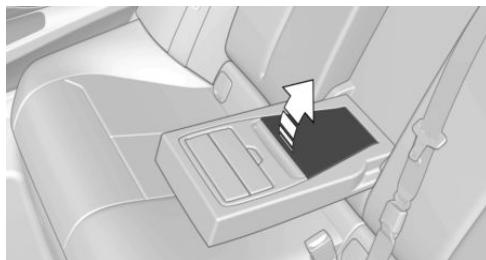
## Adjusting

Centre armrest can be adjusted to several different angles.

## Rear

There is a storage compartment at the rear of the centre armrest.

## Opening



Pull centre armrest forward with the loop.

Pull the lid upwards.

## Storage compartment in centre console in rear

There is a storage compartment in the centre console in the rear.

## Cupholder

### Note

#### **WARNING**

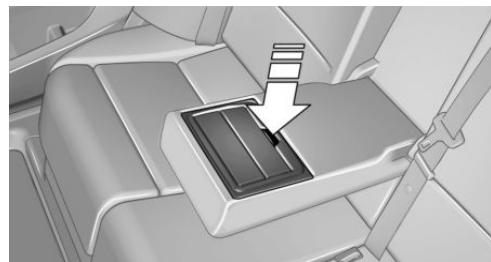
Unsuitable containers in the cupholder and hot drinks can damage the cupholders, and increase the risk of injury in an accident. Danger of injury or damage to property. Use light, lockable containers that are shatterproof. Do not transport hot drinks. Do not force objects into the cupholder.◀

## Front



## Rear

In the centre armrest.



Pull centre armrest forward with the loop.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in one after the other.



## ATTENTION

If the cupholder is open, the centre armrest cannot be folded back. Danger of damage to property. Push back the covers before folding up the centre armrest.◀

## Further compartments in the interior

### Storage compartment under driver and front passenger seat



Storage option for small objects.

### Net in the footwell of the front passenger

Smaller objects can be stowed in the net on the left side of the footwell of the front passenger.

### Nets on the backrests of the front seats

Small objects can be stowed in the nets on the backrests.

## Storage compartments in the boot

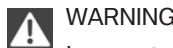
### Side storage compartments left and right

Storage compartments are located on the right and left side.

### Net for storage compartment

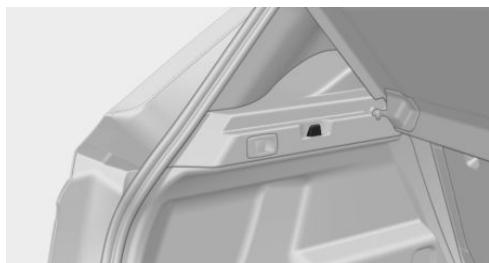
Smaller items can be stowed in the net of the right storage compartment.

### Bag holders



### WARNING

Incorrect use of the holders can represent a danger, for example if objects fly around in the case of braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury and damage to property. Only hang light objects, for example shopping bags, on the holders. Only transport heavy luggage with suitable means of securing in the boot.◀



In the boot there is a bag holder on every side.

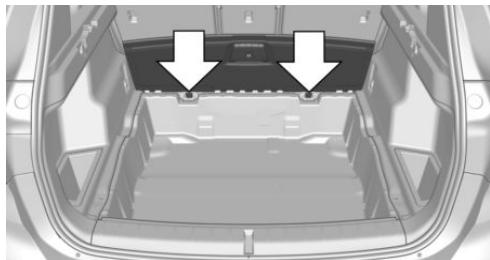
### Tensioning strap

There is a tensioning strap on the left-hand trim panel for securing small objects.

### Lashing eyes in the boot

For securing the load, see page 187, four lashing eyes are in the boot.

## Storage space under boot floor



Boot floor can be folded. To open, lift boot floor slightly and push forwards.



## **Driving hints**

The chapter provides you with information that you may require in particular driving situations or operating modes.

# Driving precautions

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Running in

### General

Moving parts need a certain time to achieve maximum operating efficiency as a unit.

The following information helps to achieve maximum service life and efficiency of the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control, see page 85, when running in.

### Note



#### WARNING

New parts and components can cause safety and Driver Assistance Systems to respond with a delay. Danger of accidents. After new parts have been installed, or if the vehicle is new, drive moderately and intervene at an early stage if necessary. Comply with running-in procedures for the corresponding parts and components.◀

## Engine, gearbox and differential

### Up to 2000 km, 1200 miles

Do not exceed the maximum engine revs and speed:

► With petrol engines, 4500 rpm and 160 km/h, approximately 100 mph.

► With diesel engines, 3500 rpm and 150 km/h, approximately 93 mph.

In principle, avoid full load or kick-down.

### From 2000 km, 1200 miles onwards

Engine and road speeds can be gradually increased.

### Tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons.

During the first 300 km, 200 miles, drive moderately.

### Brake system

Brake discs and pads only achieve a favourable wear and contact pattern after approximately 500 km, approximately 300 miles. Drive moderately during this running-in period.

### Clutch

The clutch only begins to function optimally at approximately 500 km, approximately 300 miles. Engage the clutch gently during this running-in period.

### After fitting new parts

The same running-in procedures should be observed if any of the components mentioned above have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

## General driving information

### Closing the tailgate



#### WARNING

An open tailgate projects beyond the vehicle, and in the event of an accident, braking or avoidance manoeuvres, it can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users, or damage the vehicle. There is also the danger of exhaust fumes entering the interior of the vehicle. Danger of injury or damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.◀

If there is no alternative to driving with the tailgate open:

- ▷ Close all the windows and the Glass Roof.
- ▷ Turn up the blower to a high output level.
- ▷ Maintain moderate speed.

### Hot exhaust system



#### WARNING

During driving, high temperatures can be generated under the body, for example because of the exhaust system. If flammable materials, for example leaves of grass, come into contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can catch fire. Danger of injury or damage to property.

Never remove the heat shields fitted here, or apply underseal to them. Make sure that when driving, idling or parking, no flammable materials can come into contact with hot vehicle parts. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.◀

### Diesel particle filter

The diesel particle filter collects soot particles and burns them periodically at high temperatures.

When cleaning for a few minutes, the following may occur:

- ▷ Engine temporarily runs a bit roughly.

- ▷ Noise and slight development of smoke from the exhaust shortly after shutting off the engine.
- ▷ The usual power output development requires a slightly higher engine speed.

### Radio signals



#### WARNING

Certain vehicle functions may be affected by interference from high-frequency radio signals. Such signals are output from a series of transmission systems, for example, from air traffic beacons or relay stations for mobile telecommunications.

We recommend you consult a Service Partner should you experience any difficulties in this regard.◀

### Mobile communication equipment



#### WARNING

The vehicle's electronics and mobile radio devices can interfere. The transmission operation of mobile radio devices generates radiation. Danger of injury or damage to property. If possible, only use mobile radio devices, for example mobile telephones, in the interior with direct connection to an external antenna to exclude mutual interference and to dissipate the radiation from the vehicle's interior.◀

### Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tyres and the road.

This situation, known as aquaplaning, means that the tyre can actually lose contact completely with the road surface and the vehicle can neither be steered nor the brakes properly applied.

## Wading



### ATTENTION

Driving through excessively deep water too fast can result in water entering the engine compartment, electrical system or transmission. Danger of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum specified water depth and maximum fording speed.◀

Comply with the following when driving through water:

- ▷ Only drive through calm water.
- ▷ Only drive through water up to a depth of max. 25 cm, approximately 9.8 in.
- ▷ Drive through water at no faster than 5 km/h, approximately 3 mph.

## Safe braking

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as standard.

Perform full braking in situations that require it.

The vehicle can be steered. Any obstacles can be avoided with steering wheel movements that are as calm as possible.

A pulsing of the brake pedal and hydraulic regulating sounds indicate that ABS is regulating.

## Objects in the range of movement of the pedals and in the footwell



### WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel, or block a pedal that has been pressed. Danger of accidents. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are appropriate for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use any loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.◀

## Wet roads

In damp weather, if road grit has been spread or there is heavy rain, apply the brakes lightly every few kilometres/miles.

In doing so, do not obstruct other road users.

The resulting heat dries the brake discs and pads.

The braking force will be available immediately if needed.

## Downhill gradients



### WARNING

Even slight, continuous pressure on the brake pedal can cause overheating, brake pad wear or even brake system failure. Danger of accidents. Avoid excessive loads on the brake.◀



### WARNING

When idling or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or no longer available, for example the braking effect of the engine or power assistance for the braking force and steering. Danger of accidents. Do not drive at idle speed or with the engine switched off.◀

When driving on long or steep downhill stretches, use the gear in which the least braking is required. Otherwise the brake system can overheat and braking action is reduced.

The braking effect can be additionally increased by manually shifting down, even into first gear, if applicable.

## Corrosion of the brake disc

Corrosion of the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads increase with the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion occurs when the minimum pressure that must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the discs is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake discs, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that generally cannot be corrected.

### **Condensation when vehicle is parked**

When using the automatic air conditioning, condensation develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

# Loads

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Notes

### WARNING

A high gross vehicle weight can cause the tyres to overheat, causing damage and a sudden loss of tyre pressure. Danger of accidents. Comply with the permitted load index of the tyre, and do not exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.◀

### WARNING

If the permitted total weight and the permitted axle loads are exceeded, operational safety of the vehicle is not ensured anymore. Danger of accidents. Do not exceed the permitted total weight and permitted axle loads.◀

### WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, for example mobile telephones, can be thrown through the interior during the journey, for example in an accident or during braking and evasive manoeuvres. Danger of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the interior.◀

### WARNING

The backrest can unexpectedly move during the journey due to unintentional unlocking of the rear backrests via the loops. Danger of injury. Do not attach objects to the loops for unlocking the rear backrests.◀

### ATTENTION

The boot floor is designed for a certain maximum weight. A too high weight or point loads can damage the boot floor. Danger of damage to property. Do not exceed the maximum load of the boot floor, and distribute the load evenly over the boot floor.

The maximum load is 420 kg/925 lb.◀

### ATTENTION

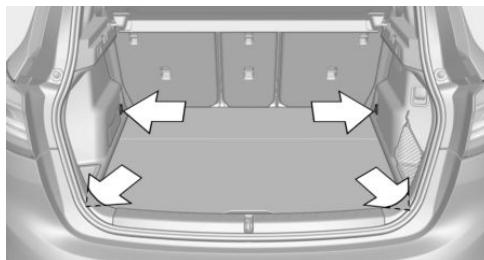
Liquids in the boot can cause damage. Danger of damage to property. Make sure that no liquids leak out in the boot.◀

## Stowing transported loads

- ▷ Wrap protective material around sharp corners and edges of the load.
- ▷ Heavy transported load: stow as far forward and as low down as possible, ideally directly behind the rear backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy transported load: with no passengers on the back seat, insert both outer seat belts into the respective opposite buckles.
- ▷ Fully fold down the rear-seat backrest if the load is to be stowed accordingly.
- ▷ Do not stack storage goods above the upper edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Use the luggage net, see page 173, to protect the vehicle's occupants. Make sure that objects cannot pass through the luggage net.

## Securing transported loads

### Lashing eyes in the boot



For securing the load four lashing eyes are in the boot.

With luggage net:

Exclusively use lower lashing eyes for securing load.

### Securing transported loads



#### WARNING

Incorrectly stowed objects can slip or be thrown into the interior, for example in an accident, during braking or evasive manoeuvres. Vehicle occupants could be hit and injured. Danger of injury. Stow and secure the objects and the load correctly.◀

- ▶ Smaller and lighter transported load: secure with tensioning straps or other suitable straps.
- ▶ Larger and heavy transported load: secure with lashing straps.

Fasten tensioning straps of various kinds to the lashing eyes in the boot.

### Fastening

Follow fitting instruction of the roof rack.

### Loads

A loaded roof rack alters the vehicle's road behaviour and steering response by shifting its centre of gravity.

When loading and driving, bear the following in mind:

- ▶ Do not exceed permitted roof and axle load as well as the permitted gross weight.
- ▶ Make sure that there is sufficient space to raise and open the Glass Roof.
- ▶ Distribute the roof load evenly.
- ▶ The roof load must not be spread over a large area.
- ▶ Place heavy items of luggage at the bottom.
- ▶ Securely fasten roof rack, for example with tensioning straps.
- ▶ Do not allow objects to protrude into the swing range of the tailgate.
- ▶ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration, braking or cornering.

## Roof rack

### Note

Fitting only possible with roof railing.

Roof racks are available as special equipment.

# Towing a trailer or using rear luggage rack

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

the practice of modifying or replacing the BMW supplied towball mount assembly is not approved. Use only the genuine BMW towball mount assembly.

BMW Group Australia does not recommend or support the installation and use of a Weight Distribution Hitch or Load Levelling Device on any BMW Group vehicles. The use of such devices may affect the vehicle's warranty status.

We recommend you consult your Authorised BMW Dealer for any further advice or clarification.

## General

The permitted trailer loads, axle loads, trailer nose weights and gross vehicle weight rating are specified in the technical data.

Possibilities to increase are known to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The vehicle is equipped with reinforced springs on the rear axle and, depending on the type, with a more powerful cooling system.

## Before a journey

### Trailer nose weight

If possible, the trailer should not have a trailer nose weight less than the minimum of 25 kg, approximately 55 lb, and also try to use the maximum trailer nose weight to the full extent.

The weight of the trailer tow hitch and the nose weight reduce the maximum load of the towing vehicle. The nose weight increases the vehicle weight. The total permitted weight of the towing vehicle must not be exceeded.

### Loads

Distribute the load as evenly as possible over the loadbed.

Stow the load as low as possible and as close as possible to the trailer axle. A low centre of trailer gravity makes the vehicle combination much more stable and safe to drive.

The permitted total weight of the trailer and the permitted trailer load of the vehicle must not be exceeded. The smaller value is the limit which should be adhered to.

## For Australia/New Zealand: note

### Towing

Australian standard AS 4177.1-2004 Caravan and light trailer towing components – towbars and towing brackets contains the following statement, which is hereby accepted by the BMW Group Australia: FOR TOWING ONLY. The trailer tow hitch supplied with your BMW vehicle should only be used for towing and not in connection with any kind of transport device attached to the trailer tow hitch, i.e. bicycle carriers or similar.

As all BMW Group towbar assemblies are designed, tested and approved as a single unit,

## Tyre pressures

Check the vehicle's and the trailer's tyre pressures carefully.

On the vehicle, the tyre inflation pressure, see page 206, for higher loads applies.

For the trailer, the regulations of the manufacturer apply.

## Runflat indicator

Reinitialise the runflat indicator after a trailer has been attached or detached or the inflation pressure has been corrected.

## Tyre Pressure Monitor

Reinitialise the Tyre Pressure Monitor after a trailer has been attached or detached or the inflation pressure has been corrected.

## Exterior mirrors

Two exterior mirrors which bring both rear corners of the trailer into your field of view are required by law. Mirrors of this type are available as special equipment from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Power consumption

Before beginning your journey, check the function of the trailer rear lights or the rear luggage rack lights.

Power of trailer rear lights or rear luggage rack lights must not exceed following values:

- ▷ Turn indicators: 42 watt per side.
- ▷ Tail lights: 50 watt per side.
- ▷ Brake lights: 84 watt total.
- ▷ Rear fog lights: 42 watt total.
- ▷ Reversing lights: 42 watt total.

Keep the switch-on times of the current consumer units in the caravan mode short in order not to place an excessive load on the vehicle battery.

## Towing a trailer

### Information



#### WARNING

Speeds in excess of approximately 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph can be enough to produce a swaying or fishtailing motion, depending on the design of trailers and the loads they are carrying. Danger of accident or damage to property.

Keep to an appropriate speed when towing a trailer. In case of swaying or fishtailing motions, brake immediately and make the necessary steering corrections as carefully as possible.◀



#### WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be adapted because of the increased axle load when towing a trailer. Driving with an inadequate tyre inflation pressure can damage the tyres. Danger of accident or damage to property. Do not exceed a speed of 100 km/h/60 mph. Increase the tyre inflation pressure of the towing vehicle by 0.2 bar. Note the maximum possible tyre inflation pressure stated on the tyre.◀

## Uphill gradients

In the interest of safety and to avoid holding up other traffic, do not attempt to climb gradients steeper than 12 % when towing a trailer.

If higher trailer loads are permitted later, the limit is 8 %.

## Driving off on upward gradients

With Steptronic transmission: The parking brake is automatically released when the accelerator pedal is pressed.

To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1. Shortly before driving off, pull and hold the switch.

The parking brake remains held as long as the switch is pulled.

2. To drive off, apply the gas and release the switch.

## Downhill gradients

On downward inclines, a vehicle combination has tendency to snake at an earlier stage.

Before the downward incline, shift down manually to the next-lowest gear and drive downwards slowly.

## High loads and high outside temperature

### ATTENTION

On long journeys with high trailer loads, a high outside temperature and a low fuel tank content, the fuel system can overheat leading to reduced engine power. Danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time. Make sure that on long journeys with high trailer loads and a high outside temperature, the fuel tank is more than 1/4 full.◀

## Trailer Stability Control

### Principle

The system helps you to neutralise a trailer's tendency to swing from side to side.

It detects snaking movements and promptly brakes the vehicle so that road speeds fall to below the critical range and the vehicle combination is stabilised.

If the power socket for the trailer is in use but no trailer is attached, for example during use of a bicycle carrier with lights, the system may become active in extreme driving situations.

### Operating requirements

The system is operational when towing a trailer and when using the trailer socket as of approximately 65 km/h, 40 mph.

## System limits

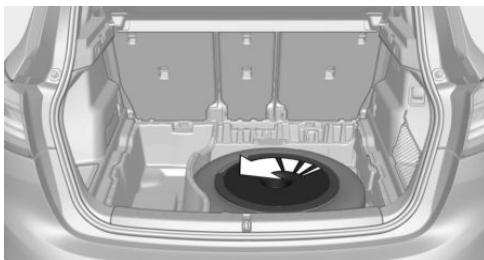
- ▷ The system cannot intervene if the trailer veers instantly, for example on slippery or loose road surfaces.
- ▷ Trailers with a high centre of gravity can tip over before a swinging motion is detected.
- ▷ The system is not operational if Dynamic Stability Control DSC is deactivated or has failed.

## Not for Australia/New Zealand: Trailer tow hitch and bracket for rear luggage rack

### Storage

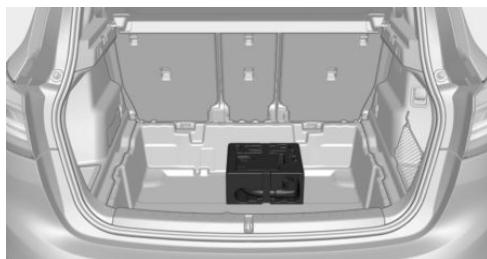
Removable ball linkage is located under boot floor.

### With emergency wheel



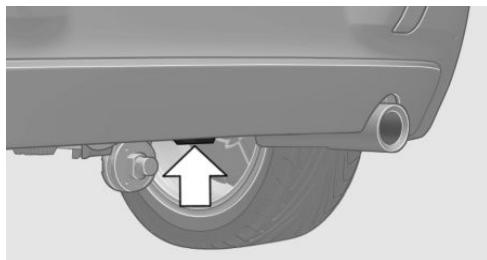
Undo wing stud to remove cover, arrow.

## In Mobility System



On-board tool kit contains removable ball linkage.

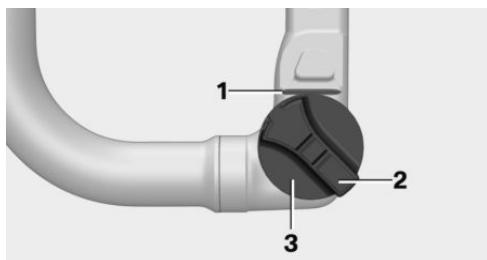
## Take-up for ball linkage



The take-up of the removable ball linkage is on the underside of the vehicle.

Follow maintenance instructions, see page [246](#).

## Ball linkage, overview



**1** Marking red or green

**2** Lock

**3** Handwheel

## Attaching ball linkage

### Before attaching

Open the lock with the key.

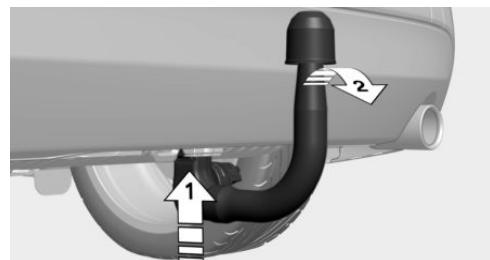
Ball linkage can be inserted when red mark on handwheel is visible.

### Inserting ball linkage



**WARNING**  
Body parts can be trapped when inserting the ball linkage. Danger of injury. When inserting the ball linkage, make sure that the area of movement is free.◀

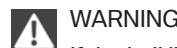
- 1.** Pull bracket cover downwards and store in the vehicle.
- 2.** Insert the ball linkage from underneath in the take-up and push upwards, arrow 1.



- 3.** Pull the ball linkage backwards until it engages, arrow 2.
- 4.** Insert the key into the lock if necessary.
- 5.** Lock the lock in the handwheel.
- 6.** Remove the key.

Ball linkage is locked correctly when green mark on handwheel is visible.

### Checking the interlock



**WARNING**  
If the ball linkage is not locked, unstable driving statuses or accidents can result. Danger of accident or damage to property. Before a journey with a trailer or load carrier, check that the ball linkage is correctly locked.◀

Ensure that the ball linkage is properly engaged by shaking it.

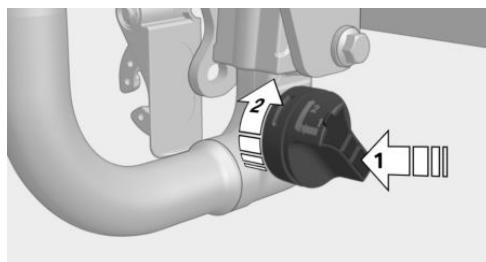
If the ball linkage is not fitted firmly, check the following points:

- ▶ Green mark on handwheel is visible.
- ▶ Ball linkage is located flush in bracket.
- ▶ The lock is locked and the key is removed.

Check with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if all points are met and the ball linkage is not firmly fitted.

### Removing ball linkage

1. Insert key and unlock the lock in the handwheel.
2. Remove the key
3. Hold ball linkage firmly.
4. Press handwheel, arrow 1, and turn in direction of arrow 2 up to stop.

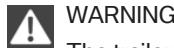


5. Pull ball linkage from the take-up.
6. Release the handwheel.
7. Insert cover in bracket.

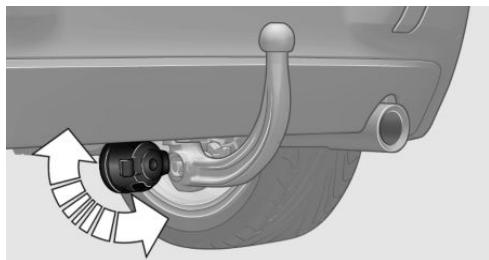
### Trailer socket

The trailer socket is underneath the bumper next to the ball linkage.

### Swivelling in and out

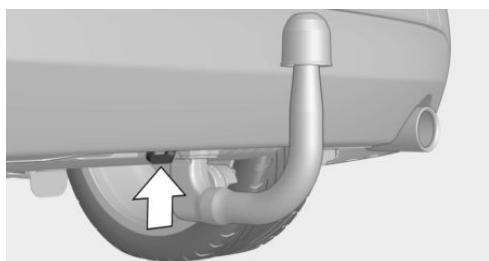


**WARNING** The trailer socket can become hot due to exhaust gases. Danger of injury. Allow the trailer socket to cool before swivelling out. ◀



Swivel trailer socket in or out up to the end position.

### Eye for securing cable



There is an eye on the trailer tow hitch bracket for attaching the trailer securing cable.

For increased safety when towing a trailer, attach the trailer securing cable to the eye.

# Saving fuel

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## General

Your vehicle contains wide-ranging technologies for reducing consumption and emission levels.

Fuel consumption depends on various factors. A number of measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and reduce burden on environment.

## Removing transported load that is not required

Extra weight increases fuel consumption.

## Removing add-on parts after use

Remove auxiliary mirrors, roof racks and rear-mounted racks after use.

Add-on parts on the vehicle interfere with its aerodynamic performance and inflate fuel consumption.

## Closing windows and the Glass Roof

An opened Glass Roof or opened window increases the drag and thus reduces the range.

## Tyres

### General

Tyres can have differing effects on fuel consumption. For example, fuel consumption can be affected by tyre size.

### Checking tyre pressures regularly

Check and, if necessary, correct tyre inflation pressures at least twice a month and before setting off on a longer journey.

Insufficient tyre inflation pressure enlarges the rolling resistance and thus increases fuel consumption and tyre wear.

## Setting off immediately

Do not warm up the engine with the vehicle at a standstill; it is preferable to set off straight away, driving at moderate engine speeds.

This brings the cold engine to operating temperature as quickly as possible.

## Driving with foresight

Avoid accelerating and braking unnecessarily.

Keep an appropriate distance from the preceding vehicle.

Anticipating the road situation and adopting a smooth driving style will reduce fuel consumption.

## Avoid high engine speeds

Basic principle: driving at low engine speeds reduces fuel consumption and wear.

Use 1st gear to drive off. As from 2nd gear, accelerate quickly. Avoid high engine speeds and shift up quickly.

Shift into the highest possible gear when you have reached the desired speed and drive at a constant speed with the lowest possible engine speed.

Pay attention to the shift point indicator in the vehicle, if fitted, see page [95](#).

## Using overrun mode

When approaching a red traffic light, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

On downward stretches, take your foot off the accelerator and allow the vehicle to roll.

The fuel supply is interrupted when coasting.

## Switching off engine if stopping for a relatively long time

When you stop the vehicle for longer periods, for example at traffic lights, railway crossings or in traffic jams, switch off the engine.

### Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function of your vehicle shuts off the engine automatically during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then started again, the fuel consumption and emissions are reduced compared with a permanently running engine. Savings can be made just by stopping the engine for a few seconds.

Fuel consumption also depends on other factors, such as driving style, road condition,

maintenance or environmental factors, for example.

## Switching off functions that are not necessary at the moment

Functions such as seat heating or rear window heating require a great deal of energy and reduce the range, especially in city traffic and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch these functions off if they are not required.

The ECO PRO drive program supports energy-saving use of comfort functions. These functions are automatically deactivated wholly or partially.

## Having the maintenance done

Have the vehicle serviced regularly to achieve optimal economy and lifetime. BMW recommends having maintenance work carried out by a BMW Service partner.

Please also see the BMW Maintenance System, see page [222](#).

## ECO PRO

### Principle

ECO PRO supports a low energy consumption driving style. To do this, the engine control and comfort functions are adjusted, such as, for example, the air conditioning power.

The engine is disconnected from the gearbox in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. The vehicle rolls when idling to optimise fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

In addition, situation-dependent notes can be displayed which help you to drive with optimum fuel consumption.

In the instrument cluster, the extension of the range achieved as a result can be displayed as a bonus range.

## Overview

### Button in the vehicle



The system comprises the following EfficientDynamics functions and displays:

- ▷ ECO PRO bonus range, see page 196.
- ▷ ECO PRO tips driving instruction, see page 196.
- ▷ ECO PRO air conditioning, see page 195.
- ▷ ECO PRO coasting driving condition, see page 197.
- ▷ ECO PRO driving style analysis, see page 198.

### Activating ECO PRO



Press the button until ECO PRO is displayed in the instrument cluster.

### Via iDrive

1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure ECO PRO"

Configure the program.

### ECO PRO tip

- ▷ "Tip at:":  
Set ECO PRO speed.
- ▷ "ECO PRO limit":  
The power is reduced when the set ECO PRO speed is reached.

### Coasting

When rolling off, the engine can be operated at idle in a way that saves fuel by coasting, see page 197.

The function is only available in ECO PRO drive mode.

### ECO PRO air conditioning

"ECO PRO climate control"

The air conditioning is adjusted for efficient fuel consumption.

A slight deviation from the temperature set such as a longer heating up and/or cooling down of the interior is therefore possible, in order to lower consumption.

Mirror heating is available when the outside temperature is low.

### ECO PRO potential

It is shown how much percentage of the possible saving potential can be achieved with the current configuration.

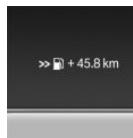
### Configuring ECO PRO

#### Via driver experience switch

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "Configure ECO PRO"
3. Configure the program.

## Display in the instrument cluster

### ECO PRO bonus range



An extension of range can be achieved due to adjusted driving style.

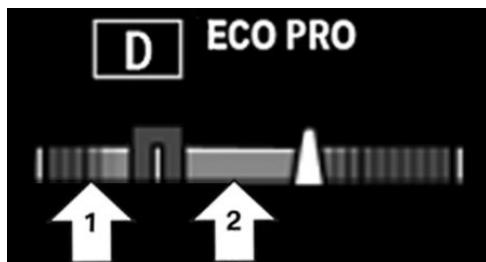
This can be displayed as bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is contained in the display of the range.

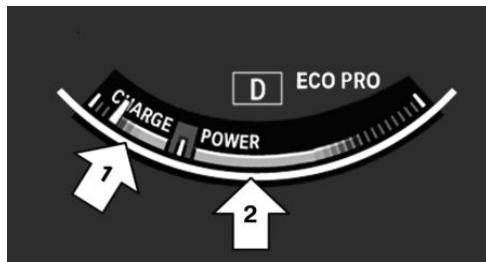
After filling up, the bonus range is automatically reset.

### Efficiency display

Display in the instrument cluster



Display in instrument cluster with extended functionality



A mark in the efficiency display provides information about the current driving style.

Marking in area arrow 1: display of the energy recuperation by rolling off or when braking.

Marking in area arrow 2: display when accelerating.

The efficiency of the driving style is shown by the colour of the bar:

- ▷ Blue display: efficient driving style as long as the marking moves in the blue area.
- ▷ Grey display: adjust driving style, for example, by coming off the gas.

The display changes to blue as soon as all the conditions for driving with optimised fuel consumption are met.

### ECO PRO tip, driving note



The arrow shows that the driving style can be adjusted to be more efficient on fuel consumption, for example, by coming off the gas.

### Information

The efficiency display and ECO PRO tips in the instrument cluster are displayed if the ECO PRO display is activated.

Activate display of driving style and ECO PRO tips:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instr. cluster display"
3. "ECO PRO information"

### ECO PRO tip, symbols

An additional symbol and test instruction are shown.

Symbol	Measure
	Come off the gas for efficient driving style or decelerate carefully.
	Reduce speed to the selected ECO PRO speed.
	Steptronic transmission: shift from M/S to D.

Symbol	Measure
	Steptronic transmission / manual gearbox: follow gearshift recommendation.
	Manual gearbox: engage idling for engine stop.

## Coasting

### Principle

The system helps to save fuel.

To do this, the engine is automatically disconnected from the gearbox in selector lever position D under certain circumstances. The vehicle continues to roll in idle to reduce consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This vehicle condition is called coasting.

As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically connected again.

### Notes

Coasting is a component of ECO PRO, see page [194](#), drive mode.

By calling up the ECO PRO drive mode via the drive experience switch coasting is automatically activated.

The function is available over a given speed range.

A precautionary driving style helps to use the function as often as possible and supports the consumption-reducing effect of coasting.

### Safety function

The function is not available if one of the following conditions is met:

- ▷ DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
- ▷ Driving in the dynamic boundary range and on upward or downward gradients.

- ▷ Battery charge state too low or too high power requirement in the on-board network.
- ▷ Cruise Control activated.
- ▷ Towing a trailer.

### Functional requirements

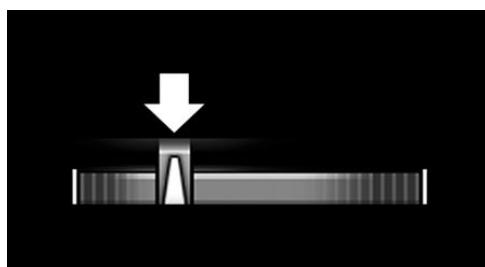
The function is available in ECO PRO drive mode in the speed range of approx. 50 km/h, approx. 30 mph to 160 km/h, approx. 100 mph if the following conditions are met:

- ▷ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
- ▷ Selector lever in selector lever position D.
- ▷ Engine and gearbox are at operating temperature.

Coasting vehicle condition can be influenced using shift paddles.

### Display

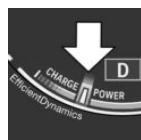
#### Display in the instrument cluster



The marking in the efficiency display has a blue background and is at zero. The revolution counter displays information about the idle speed.

The coasting point display is illuminated at zero when coasting.

## Display in instrument cluster with extended functionality



The marking in the efficiency display underneath the revolution counter has a blue background and is at zero. The revolution counter displays information about the idle speed.

The coasting point display is illuminated at zero when coasting.

## Display on the Control Display

In the EfficientDynamics Info the drive state coasting is shown during the journey.

The route covered in the coasting drive state is shown by a counter. The counter reading is reset before the start of each journey.

## Showing EfficientDynamics Info

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "EfficientDynamics"
3. "EfficientDynamics info"

## Deactivating system manually

The function can be deactivated in the Configuration ECO PRO, see page 195, menu, for example, to use the braking effect of the engine on slopes.

The setting is saved for the currently used profile.

## ECO PRO driving style analysis

### Principle

The system helps develop a particularly efficient driving style and to save fuel.

To do this, the driving style is analysed. Evaluation is done in various categories and is shown on the Control Display.

Using this display, the individual driving style can be adjusted to save fuel.

The last fifteen minutes of a journey are evaluated.

Due to an efficient driving style, the range of the vehicle can be increased.

This gain in range is shown as a bonus range on the instrument cluster and Control Display.

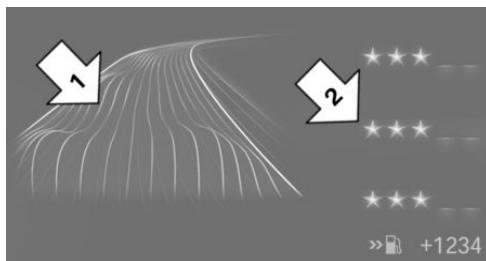
## Operating requirements

The function is available in ECO PRO Mode.

## Calling up ECO PRO driving style analysis

1. Activate ECO PRO.
2. "EfficientDynamics"
3. Select the symbol.

## Display on the Control Display



The display of the ECO PRO driving style analyser consists of a symbolised route and a table of values.

The road symbolises the efficiency of the driving style. The more efficient the driving style, the more evenly the route is illustrated, arrow 1.

The table of values contains stars. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are contained in the table and the faster the bonus range increases, arrow 2.

On the other hand, if driving style is inefficient, a bumpier road and a reduced number of stars is shown.

To support an efficient driving style, ECO PRO tips are shown during the journey.

Tips on energy-saving driving style, saving fuel, see page 193.





Online Edition for Part no. 01 402 966 666 - X/15

## Mobility

To assist you in preserving your vehicle's mobility, this section contains important information on operating fluids, wheels and tyres, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

# Refuelling

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Notes

Before refuelling, observe notes on fuel quality, see page 204.



### ATTENTION

If the range drops below 50 km, approximately 30 miles the engine could not be supplied anymore with sufficient fuel. Engine functions are no longer ensured. Danger of damage to property. Refuel in good time. ▲

## For diesel engines

The filler neck is designed for refuelling at diesel pumps.

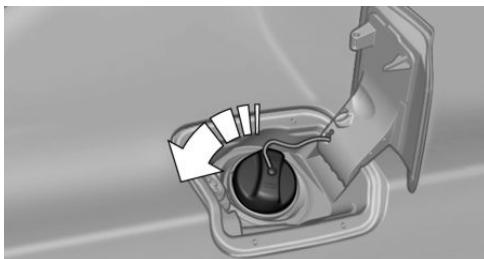
## Fuel tank cap

### Opening

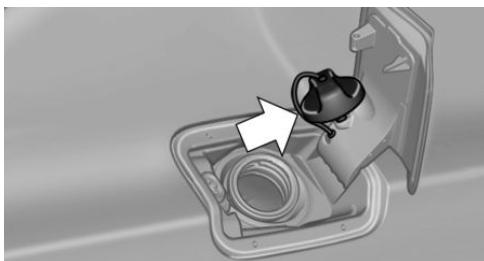
1. Briefly press rear edge of fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the fuel tank cap anticlockwise.



3. Place the fuel tank cap in the holder on the fuel filler flap.



### Closing

1. Fit the tank cap and turn clockwise until it is clearly heard to click into place.
2. Close fuel filler cap.



### WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel tank cap can be clamped and crushed when screwing closed. This means the cap cannot be closed correctly, and fuel vapours or fuel can emerge. Danger of injury or damage to property. Make sure that the retaining strap does not get trapped and crushed when closing the cap.◀

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle cuts out for the first time.

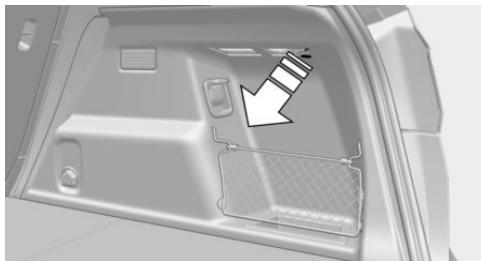
Comply with the safety regulations displayed at filling stations.

## Unlocking fuel filler flap manually

For example, with an electrical fault.

The unlocking mechanism is in the boot.

1. Pull the green tag with the fuel pump symbol. Fuel filler flap is unlocked.



2. Briefly press rear edge of fuel filler flap.  
Fuel filler flap is opened.

## Note when refuelling



### ATTENTION

Fuels are poisonous and aggressive. Overfilling the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. If it comes into contact with painted surfaces, it can damage them. This pollutes the environment. Danger of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.◀

When refuelling, insert the filler nozzle fully into the filler neck. Lifting the filler nozzle during refuelling results in the following:

- ▷ The fuel supply being cut off prematurely.
- ▷ Fuel vapour and fumes being fed back less effectively.

# Fuel

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Fuel quality

### General

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that is adapted to the conditions in winter or summer. Fuel that is sold in winter facilitates cold starting, for example.

### Note

#### ATTENTION

Even fuels corresponding to the specifications may be of low quality. Engine problems can arise, for example poor engine starting, impaired driving properties or reduced performance. Danger of damage to property. In the case of engine problems, use a different filling station or refuel with a higher octane fuel from a brand manufacturer.◀

### Petrol

For optimal fuel consumption, the petrol should be sulphur-free or as low in sulphur content as possible.

Fuels labelled on the pump as containing metal must not be used.

#### ATTENTION

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. In addition, the catalytic converter will be permanently damaged. Danger of damage to property. Do not use the following fuel or additives with petrol engines:

- ▷ Leaded petrol.
- ▷ Metallic additives, for example manganese or iron.

After filling the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

You can fill up with fuels with a maximum proportion of ethanol of 25 %, for example E10 or E25.

#### ATTENTION

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and engine. Danger of damage to property. Do not fill with any fuels that either have a higher ethanol content than recommended or that contain methanol, for example M5 to M100.◀

The engine has anti-knock control. This means that different petrol grades can be used.

### Petrol grade

Super with RON 95.

### Minimum grade

Unleaded petrol with RON 91.

#### ATTENTION

Fuel below the specified minimum quality can impact the engine function or lead to engine damage. Danger of damage to property. Do not refuel petrol below the specified minimum quality.◀

## Diesel



### ATTENTION

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Danger of damage to property.

Note the following with diesel engines:

- ▷ Do not fill with rapeseed methyl ester RME.
- ▷ Do not fill with biodiesel.
- ▷ Do not fill up with petrol.
- ▷ No diesel additives.

After filling the wrong fuel, do not press the start/stop button. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

## Diesel quality

The engine is designed to run on diesel fuel to DIN EN 590.

**BMW recommends**  
**Shell Quality Fuels** 

# Wheels and tyres

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Tyre pressures

### Information for your safety

A tyre's condition and pressure influence the following:

- ▷ Operating life of the tyre.
- ▷ Driving safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.

### Checking tyre inflation pressure



#### WARNING

A damaged tyre with too low or missing tyre inflation pressure at all impairs driving properties, for example steering and braking. Danger of accidents. Check tyre inflation pressure regularly and adjust as necessary, for example twice a month or before any long journey.◀

Additionally, regularly check the tyre inflation pressure of the emergency wheel in the boot and correct the pressure if necessary.

Tyres have a natural, uniform loss of tyre pressure.

Tyres heat up when driving and with the temperature of the tyre, the tyre inflation pressure increases. The tyre inflation pressure data re-

late to cold tyres or tyres at ambient temperature.

Only check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. In other words, after a journey for a maximum of 2 km, 1.25 miles or if the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

Inflating devices can display a pressure as much as 0.1 bar too low.

With runflat indicator: reinitialise the runflat indicator after adjusting tyre inflation pressure.

With tyre inflation pressure monitor: reset the tyre inflation pressure monitor after adjusting the tyre inflation pressure to a new value.

### Tyre inflation pressure inscriptions



The tyre inflation pressures for the tyre sizes categorised by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable for the respective vehicle type can be found on the door pillar of the driver's door.

If the speed letter of the tyre cannot be found, the tyre inflation pressure of the corresponding size applies. The tyre inflation pressure data apply to tyres at ambient temperature.

### For Australia/New Zealand



#### WARNING

The inflation pressures on the tyre label are applicable only for tyres explicitly mentioned on the label. Since tyre inflation pressures for tyres that may be covered by the label – by size, speed category and load rating/

load index – but not explicitly mentioned on the label may be different. Please obtain adequate inflation pressures in accordance with the tyre manufacturer's specifications at your tyre dealer.◀

## Tyre sizes

The pressure values apply for the tyre sizes classified by the vehicle manufacturer as suitable and the tyre makes recommended for the respective vehicle type.

More information regarding wheels and tyres can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Tyre tread

### Summer tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 3 mm, 0.12 in.

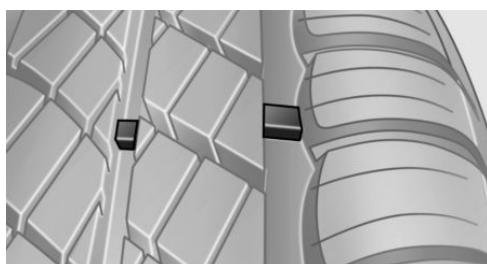
Below a tread depth of 3 mm, approximately 0.12 in, there is a high risk of aquaplaning.

### Winter tyres

The tyre tread depth should not be less than 4 mm, approximately 0.16 in.

Below a tread depth of 4 mm, approximately 0.16 in, suitability for vehicle operation in winter is restricted.

### Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed across the tyre circumference and have the legally prescribed

minimum height of 1.6 mm, approximately 0.06 in.

They are identified on the tyre's side wall by TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

## Tyre damage

### General

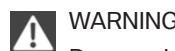
Inspect tyres regularly for damage, the presence of foreign bodies and wear.

### Notes

Vehicle behaviour that is an indication of tyre damage or other faults:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations during the journey.
- ▷ Unusual vehicle response, such as pronounced pulling to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by, for example, running over kerbs, road damage etc.



### WARNING

Damaged tyres can result in lower tyre inflation pressure, leading to a loss of control over the vehicle. Danger of accidents. If you get a note about tyre damage during the journey, immediately reduce speed and come to a halt. Have the wheels and tyres checked. To do this, carefully drive to a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. If necessary, have the vehicle towed or transported there.◀



### WARNING

Damaged tyres can result in lower tyre inflation pressure, leading to a loss of control over the vehicle. Danger of accidents. Do not repair damaged tyres, have them renewed instead.◀

## Age of tyres

### Recommendation

Irrespective of wear, change tyres after six years at the latest.

### Date of manufacture

On the tyre side wall:

DOT ... 3615: the tyre was made in the 36th week of 2015.

## Replacement of wheels and tyres

### Fitting

Have the wheel fitted and balanced by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Wheel/tyre combination

The correct wheel and tyre combination and rim designs for the vehicle can be consulted at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Incorrect wheel and tyre combinations will interfere with the proper functioning of various systems, such as ABS and DSC.

To maintain good vehicle handling, always fit tyres of the same make and tread pattern to all wheels.

After a tyre has been damaged, fit the original wheel and tyre combination again.

### WARNING

Wheels and tyres that are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for example by touching the bodywork as a result of tolerances, in spite of having the same nominal size. Danger of accidents. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends using

wheels and tyres that have been categorised as suitable for the respective vehicle type.◀

### Recommended makes of tyre



BMW recommends particular brands of tyre for each tyre size. These can be seen by the asterisk on the side wall of the tyre.

### New tyres

New tyres do not achieve their full road grip immediately, for production reasons.

During the first 300 km, 200 miles, drive moderately.

### Retreaded tyres

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against the use of retreaded tyres.



### WARNING

Retreaded tyres can have various tyre carcasses. Their durability may be reduced with increasing age. Danger of accidents. Do not use retreaded tyres.◀

### Winter tyres

For operation on wintry carriageways, winter tyres are recommended.

Although so-called all-season tyres with an M+S label have better winter characteristics than summer tyres, they do not normally match the performance of winter tyres.

## Maximum speed of winter tyres

If the vehicle is capable of speeds higher than the speed permitted for the winter tyres, an indicating label stating the maximum permitted speed for the tyres fitted must be displayed in the driver's field of view. The sticker is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

If winter tyres are fitted, observe and comply with the respectively permitted maximum speed.

## Run-flat tyres

For your own safety, when using run-flat tyres, do not mix with other types of tyre. There is no spare wheel available in the event of a breakdown. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Interchanging front and rear wheels

Different tread wear patterns arise on the wheels of the front and rear axles, depending on the individual operating conditions. To achieve even wear, it is possible to swap the wheels over from one axle to the other. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop. After changing, check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust if necessary.

## Tyre storage

Store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and preferably dark place when not in use.

Protect tyres against contamination from oil, grease and fuel.

Do not exceed the maximum tyre pressure indicated on the tyre's side wall.

## Run-flat tyres

### Label



RSC marking on the tyre side wall.

These wheels consist of tyres that are self-supporting within certain limitations, and special rims.

The reinforced side wall means that the tyre keeps the vehicle mobile to a degree even if tyre pressure has been lost.

Observe the information on continuing to drive with a flat tyre.

## Changing run-flat tyres

For your own safety, use only run-flat tyres. There is no spare wheel available in the event of a breakdown.

A Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can answer other questions at any time.

## Remedying flat tyres

### Safety measures

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a solid surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible.
- ▶ Switch on hazard warning lights.
- ▶ Protect the vehicle against rolling, by applying the parking brake.
- ▶ Engage the steering wheel lock in the straight ahead position of the wheels.

- ▷ Allow all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▷ Set up warning triangle an appropriate distance away.

odourless, but highly toxic. In enclosed spaces, the exhaust fumes can also build up outside the vehicle. Danger of fatal injury. Keep the exhaust pipe clear and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

## Mobility system

### Principle

With the mobility system, minor tyre damage can be quickly sealed, to allow you to drive on. To do that, liquid sealant is pumped into the tyres which encloses the damage from the inside when it hardens.

The compressor can be used to check the tyre inflation pressure.

### Notes

- ▷ Please observe the notes on the application of the Mobility system which are on the compressor and the sealant container.
- ▷ Applying the Mobility system can be ineffective for tyre damage as from a size of approximately 4 mm.
- ▷ Contact a Service partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if you are unable to put the tyre back in operation.
- ▷ If possible, foreign matter that has penetrated the tyre should remain inside the tyre.
- ▷ Remove the speed limit sticker from the sealant container and attach to the steering wheel.
- ▷ Using sealants can damage the TPM wheel electronics. If sealant is used, check the electronics as soon as you get an opportunity and have them replaced if necessary.



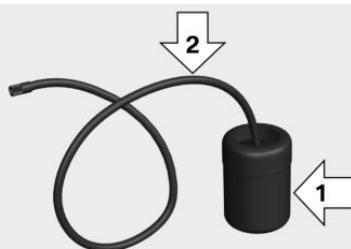
### DANGER

A blocked exhaust pipe or inadequate ventilation can allow harmful exhaust fumes to penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, which is colourless and

### Storage

Mobility system is located under boot floor.

### Sealant container

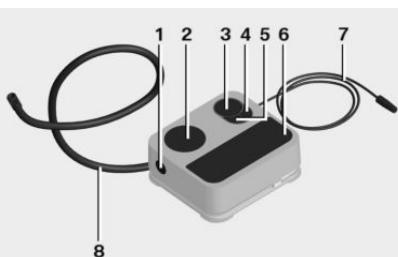


▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.

▷ Filler hose, arrow 2.

Note the use-by date on the sealant container.

### Compressor



1 Cylinder release

2 Mounting for cylinder

3 Tyre inflation pressure display

4 Reduce tyre inflation pressure

5 On/Off button

6 Compressor

7 Plug/cable for socket

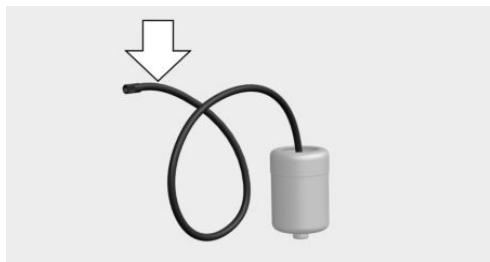
8 Connecting hose

## Filling with sealing compound

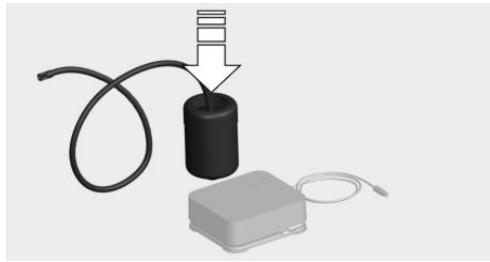
- Shake the sealant container.



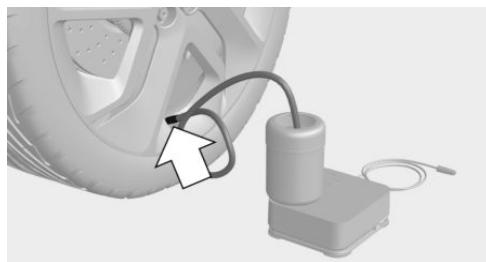
- Pull filler hose completely from the cover of the sealant container. Do not kink the hose.



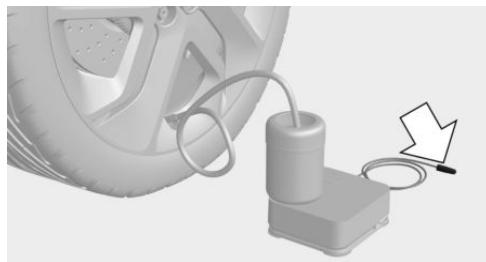
- Push the sealant container into the bracket on the compressor housing, until it engages.



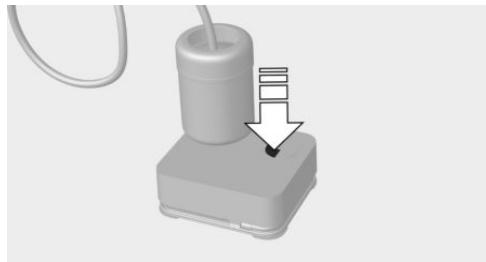
- Screw the filler hose of the sealant container onto the tyre valve of the faulty wheel.



- Insert the plug into the socket on the inside of the vehicle while the compressor is switched off.



- Switch on the compressor with the ignition switched on or the engine running.



### ATTENTION

The compressor can overheat if operated for too long. Danger of damage to property. Do not let the compressor run for longer than 10 minutes.◀

Let the compressor run for approximately 10 minutes to fill the sealing compound and

achieve a tyre inflation pressure of approximately 2.5 bar.

The tyre inflation pressure may rise to approximately 5 bar during the filling process of the sealing compound. Do not switch off the compressor during this step.

If it does not reach a tyre inflation pressure of 2 bar:

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Remove the filler hose from the wheel.
3. Drive forwards and backwards by 10 m, approximately 400 inches to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
4. Re-inflate the tyre with the compressor.

Contact a Service partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop if the device does not reach a tyre inflation pressure of 2 bar.

## Storing Mobility system

1. Remove the filler hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
2. Remove the sealant container from the compressor after pressing the red release button.
3. Pack empty sealant container to avoid soiling in the boot.
4. Store Mobility system in the vehicle again.

## Spreading sealant compound

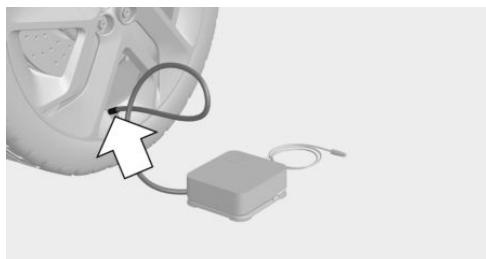
Immediately drive for approximately 10 km/5 miles to evenly distribute the sealing compound in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h/50 mph.

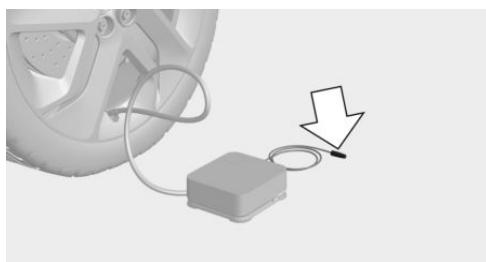
If possible, do not drive slower than 20 km/h/12 mph.

## Correcting the tyre inflation pressure

1. Stop in a suitable area.
2. Bolt the connecting hose of the compressor directly onto the tyre valve.



3. Insert the plug into the socket on the inside of the vehicle.



4. Correct tyre inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
  - ▷ Increase pressure: switch on the compressor with the engine running or the ignition switched on.
  - ▷ Reduce pressure: press the button on the compressor.

## Continuing with journey

Do not exceed maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h, approximately 50 mph.

Reinitialise runflat indicator.

Reinitialise Tyre Pressure Monitor.

Have the punctured tyre and the sealant container of the Mobility system replaced as soon as possible.

## Snow chains

### Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using fine-link snow chains. Certain fine-link snow chains have been tested, found safe for use in traffic, and categorised as suitable by the manufacturer of the vehicle.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Using

Snow chains may only be used in pairs on the front wheels with tyres of the following sizes:

- ▷ 195/65 R 16.
- ▷ 195/55 R 17.

Observe the snow chain manufacturer's notes.

Ensure that the snow chains are always adequately taut. Re-tighten them if necessary in accordance with the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialise the runflat indicator with snow chains fitted, as the instrument might otherwise issue an incorrect reading.

Do not initialise the Tyre Pressure Monitor with snow chains fitted, as the instrument might otherwise issue an incorrect reading.

When driving with snow chains, activate Dynamic Traction Control briefly if necessary.

### Maximum speed with snow chains

When snow chains are fitted, do not exceed 50 km/h, 30 mph.

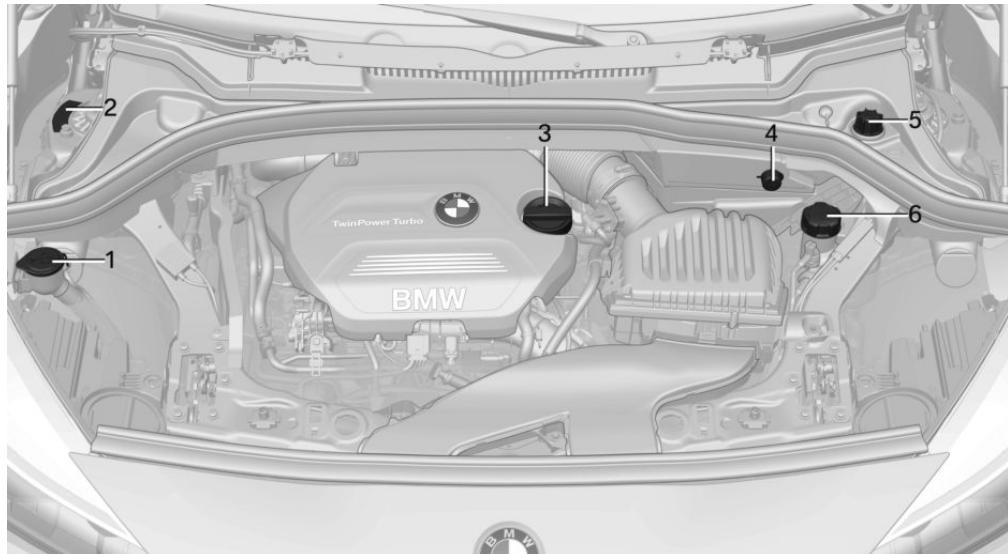
# Engine compartment

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the se-

lected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Engine compartment quick reference guide



- 1 Filler neck for washing fluid
- 2 Vehicle identification number
- 3 Oil filler neck
- 4 Starting assistance, positive battery terminal
- 5 Starting assistance, negative battery terminal
- 6 Coolant tank

## Bonnet

### Notes

#### **WARNING**

Incorrectly performed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety risk. Danger of accident or damage to property. Have work in the engine compartment undertaken by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

#### **WARNING**

The engine compartment contains moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move when the vehicle is switched off, for example the radiator fan. Danger of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◀

#### **WARNING**

The bonnet has projecting parts on the inside, for example locking hooks. Danger of injury. When the bonnet is open, watch out for projecting parts and keep these areas clear.◀

#### **WARNING**

If the bonnet is not correctly locked, it can come open during the journey and impair visibility. Danger of accidents. Stop immediately and close the bonnet correctly.◀

#### **WARNING**

Parts of the body can become trapped when opening and closing the bonnet. Danger of injury. When opening and closing, make sure that the area of movement of the bonnet is free.◀

#### **ATTENTION**

When wipers are folded away from the windscreens, they can be trapped when the bonnet is opened. Danger of damage to property. Before opening the bonnet, make sure

that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreens.◀

### Opening bonnet

- Pull lever, arrow 1.

Bonnet is released.



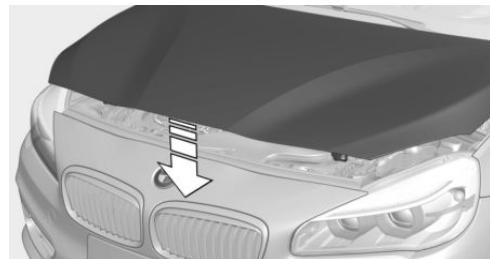
- After releasing the lever, pull lever again, arrow 2.

Bonnet is opened.

### Indicator and warning lamps

With the bonnet unlocked, a Check Control message is shown.

### Closing bonnet



Allow bonnet to drop from approximately 40 cm, approximately 16 in in height.

The bonnet must audibly engage into place on both sides.

# Engine oil

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## General

The engine oil consumption depends on the driving style and operating conditions.

Engine oil consumption can be increased, for example, in the following situations:

- ▷ Dynamic driving style.
- ▷ Running in the engine.
- ▷ Engine idling.
- ▷ Use of engine oil grades categorised as unsuitable.

Therefore check the engine oil level regularly each time you fill up with fuel.

The vehicle has electronic oil measurement.

Electronic oil measurement has two measurement principles:

- ▷ Status display.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

## Electronic oil measurement

### Status display

#### Principle

The engine oil level is electronically monitored during the journey and shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum, a Check Control message is shown.

### Requirements

A current measurement is available after approximately 30 minutes of the journey. With a shorter journey, the status of the last sufficiently long journey is shown.

When frequently making short trips, regularly take a detailed measurement.

### Displaying engine oil level

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Engine oil level"

### Messages for the engine oil level

Different messages are shown on the display, depending on the engine oil level. Follow these messages.

If there is too little engine oil, within the next 200 km, approximately 120 miles top up engine oil, see page 217.



#### ATTENTION

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. Danger of damage to property. Immediately replenish engine oil.◀

Ensure not to top up with too much engine oil.



#### ATTENTION

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. Danger of damage to property. Do not top up with too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

## Detailed measurement

### Principle

In the detailed measurement, the engine oil level is checked at a standstill and shown on a scale.

With a petrol engine:

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum, a Check Control message is shown.

With diesel engine:

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum or an overfill is established, a Check Control message is shown.

During the measurement, the idle speed is slightly raised.

### Requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is standing horizontally.
- ▷ Manual gearbox: gear lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

## Carrying out a detailed measurement

Carry out a detailed measurement of the engine oil level:

1. "Vehicle information"
2. "Vehicle status"
3.  "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and shown on a scale.

Duration: approximately 1 minute.

## Adding engine oil

### Notes



#### WARNING

Service products, for example oils, greases, coolants and fuels, can contain substances that are harmful to health. Danger of injury or life. Comply with the notes on the containers. Do not allow service products to come into contact with clothing, skin eyes. Do not pour service products into other bottles. Keep service products out of the reach of children.◀



#### ATTENTION

Too little engine oil causes engine damage. Danger of damage to property.

Top up the engine oil within the next 200 km, approximately 120 miles.◀



#### ATTENTION

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. Danger of damage to property. Do not top up with too much engine oil. If there is too much engine oil, have the oil level corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.◀

### General

Do not top up engine oil unless message is displayed in instrument cluster. The top-up amount is specified in the message on the instrument cluster.

Switch off the ignition and securely stop the vehicle before topping up with engine oil.

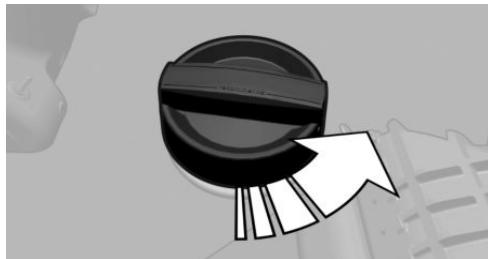
Ensure not to top up with too much engine oil.

### Overview

The oil filler neck is in the engine compartment, see page [214](#).

## Opening the oil filler neck

1. Open bonnet, see page 215.
2. Open the oil filler neck anticlockwise.



3. Add engine oil.

Make a detailed measurement, see page 217, after topping up.

## Engine oil types for topping up

### Notes



#### ATTENTION

Oil additives can damage the engine. Danger of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.◀



#### ATTENTION

Incorrect engine oil can lead to engine malfunctions and damage. Danger of damage to property. When selecting the engine oil, make sure that the viscosity class of the engine oil is correct.◀

The engine oil quality is decisive for the lifetime of the engine.

Several engine oil types are not available in all countries.

### Viscosity classes

When selecting an engine oil, ensure that the engine oil has one of the viscosity classes SAE 0W-40, SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-40, SAE 5W-30, 0W-20 or 5W-20.

Viscosity classes 0W-20 or 5W-20 are only suitable for certain engines.

Further information regarding suitable oil specifications and viscosities of engine oils can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Suitable engine oil grades

Engine oils with following oil specifications can be topped up:

#### Petrol engine

BMW Longlife-01.

BMW Longlife-01 FE.

BMW Longlife-04.

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

BMW Longlife-14 FE+.

#### Diesel engine

BMW Longlife-04.

BMW Longlife-12 FE.

The oil specification BMW Longlife-12 FE+ is only suitable for certain diesel engines.

Further information regarding suitable oil specifications and viscosities of engine oils can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Alternative engine oil types

If suitable engine oils are not available, up to 1 litre, approximately 2 pints of an engine oil with the following oil specification can be used for topping up:

#### Petrol engine

ACEA A3/B4.

Diesel engine

ACEA C3.

## Oil change

### ATTENTION

Engine oil not replaced in time can lead to increased engine wear and thus engine damage. Danger of damage to property. Do not exceed the service date indicated in the vehicle.◀

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the engine oil changed by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

BMW recommends  
**Original BMW Engine Oil.**

# Coolant

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Notes

### **WARNING**

If the cooling system is opened when the engine is hot, coolant can escape and cause scalds. Danger of injury. Only open the cooling system when the engine has cooled down.◀

### **WARNING**

Additives are harmful to health and incorrect additives can damage the engine. Danger of injury and damage to property. Do not allow additives to come into contact with clothing, skin or eyes, and do not swallow them. Only use suitable additives.◀

Coolant is a mixture of water and an additive.

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information regarding suitable additives is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Coolant level

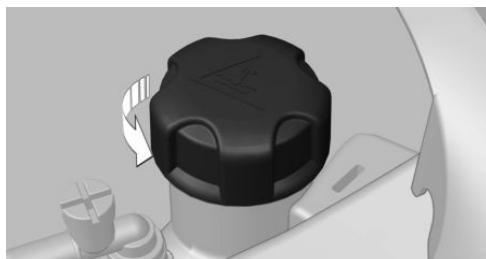
### **Overview**

Depending on the engine version, the coolant tank is located on the right or left of the engine compartment.

## Checking

In the coolant tank there are yellow Min and Max markings.

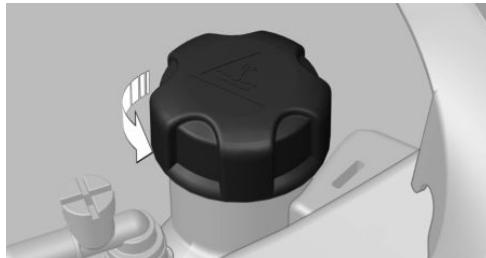
1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn cap on coolant tank slightly anti-clockwise until it starts to open, then allow the pressure to escape.



3. Open cap on coolant tank.
4. The coolant level is correct if it is between the Min. and Max. marks in the filler neck.

## Topping up

1. Allow the engine to cool down.
2. Turn the cap on the coolant tank slightly anti-clockwise until it starts to open, then allow the pressure to escape before opening it fully.



3. If necessary, slowly top up to the correct level; do not overfill.

4. Tighten cap.
5. Have the cause of coolant loss rectified as soon as possible.

## Disposal



When disposing of coolant and coolant additives, comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations.

# Maintenance

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## BMW Maintenance System

The maintenance system points out the necessary maintenance measures and so supports in maintaining the road and operational safety of the vehicle.

Scopes and intervals may vary depending on country variant. Replacement work, spare parts, operating materials and wear material are calculated separately. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Condition Based Service, CBS

Sensors and advanced algorithms monitor the conditions in which your vehicle is used. Condition Based Service uses this information to calculate the maintenance requirements.

The system thus enables adaptation of the scope of maintenance to the individual usage profile.

Detailed information on service requirements, see page 93, can be displayed at the Control Display.

## Service data in the remote control

Information about the maintenance requirement is continuously stored in the remote control. The Service partner can read out this data and suggest an optimised maintenance scope for your vehicle.

This is why you should hand over the remote control that was last used for driving to your service advisor with the vehicle.

## Periods out of use

Immobilisation periods with the vehicle battery disconnected are not taken into account.

Updating the time-dependent maintenance scope such as brake fluid and any engine oil and microfilter or activated carbon filter can be done by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Service history

Have maintenance and repair carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The maintenance work carried out is entered in the proof of maintenance and the vehicle data. The entries are, just like a service booklet, evidence of regular maintenance.

If an entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle, service-relevant data is not only saved in the vehicle but also on the central IT systems of BMW AG, Munich.

The data entered in the electronic service history can also be viewed by the new vehicle owner after a change of vehicle owner. In addition, a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop can view the data entered in the electronic service history.

The vehicle owner can contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to object to the entry in the electronic service history, the associated data storage in the vehicle and data transfer to the vehicle manufacturer, in relation to his/her time as the vehicle owner. In that case, no entry is made in the electronic service history of the vehicle.

Maintenance entered is shown on the Control Display, see page 94.

## For Australia/New Zealand: maintenance

No maintenance work other than normal maintenance is required to keep the emission levels of your vehicle within the design limits.

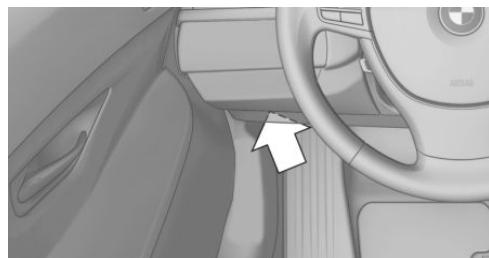
## Socket for on-board diagnosis, OBD

### Note



Incorrect use of the on-board diagnosis socket can result in malfunctions in the vehicle. Danger of damage to property. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly recommends restricting access to the socket for the on-board diagnosis exclusively to a Service Partner of the manufacturer, another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or other correspondingly authorised persons.◀

### Position



The OBD socket for checking components definitive in terms of the composition of the exhaust emissions is on the driver's side.

### Emissions

-  ▷ The warning light flashes:  
Engine malfunction that could damage the catalytic converter.  
Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning light is illuminated:  
Deterioration of exhaust emissions. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

## Recycling

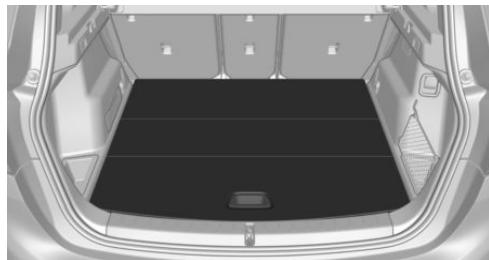
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends handing the vehicle in at a take-back point nominated by the manufacturer at the end of its life cycle. The regulations concerning the returning of end-of-life vehicles may vary from country to country. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

# Replacing parts

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## On-board tool kit



Tool kit is located under boot floor.

## Replacing the wiper blades

### Note

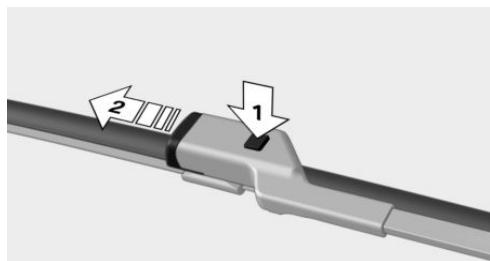


#### ATTENTION

The windscreens can be damaged if the wiper arm drops onto the windscreens without wiper blades fitted. Danger of damage to property. Hold the wiper arm firmly when changing the wiper blades and do not put the wipers into contact with the windscreens unless wiper blades are fitted.◀

### Replacing front wiper blades

1. To replace the wiper blades, place the wipers in the fold-out position, see page 81.
2. Fold out wiper arm and hold firm.
3. Press button, arrow 1, and pull out wiper blade.



4. Insert new wiper blade in the opposite sequence until it engages.
5. Fold in wipers.



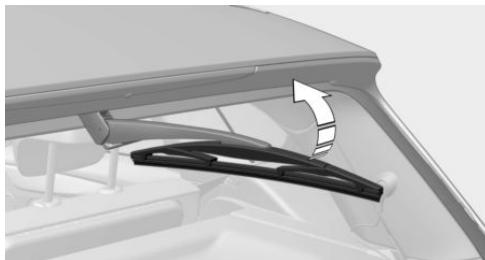
#### ATTENTION

When wipers are folded away from the windscreens, they can be trapped when the bonnet is opened. Danger of damage to property. Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the wipers with wiper blades fitted are in contact with the windscreens.◀

### Changing rear wiper blade

1. To replace the wiper blades, place the wipers in the fold-out position, see page 81.
2. Fold out wiper arm.

3. Rotate wiper blade backwards until it stops.



4. Continue to rotate wiper blade against the stop and therefore press out of the fastening.
5. Press new wiper blade into the fastening until you hear it engaging.
6. Fold wipers in.

## Replacing bulbs

### Information

#### Lamps and lights

Lamps and lights are an important aspect of driving safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have the corresponding work carried out by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop, if you are not familiar with it or it is not described here.

A spare lamp box is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

#### **WARNING**

Lamps can become hot during operation. Contact with the lamps can lead to burns. Danger of injury. Only replace lamps in cooled-down condition.◀

#### **WARNING**

Short circuits can occur when working on switched on lighting systems. Danger of injury or damage to property. Switch the respective lights off when working on the lighting system. Observe the possibly enclosed notes of the lamp manufacturer.◀

#### **ATTENTION**

Dirty lamps have a reduced lifetime. Danger of damage to property. Do not touch the glass of new lamps with your bare hands. Use a clean tissue or similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

#### Light-emitting diodes, LEDs

Some equipment versions have light-emitting diodes behind a cover as a light source.

These resemble conventional lasers and are classified by legislation as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

#### **WARNING**

Excessively intense brightness can irritate or harm the retina of the eye. Danger of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove covers from LEDs.◀

#### Headlight glass

During cool or humid weather, the exterior lights can mist over. When driving with the light switched on, the condensation disappears after a short time. There is no need to replace the headlight glass.

If there is an increasing build-up of moisture despite the headlights being switched on, for example water droplets in the light, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having the headlights checked by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

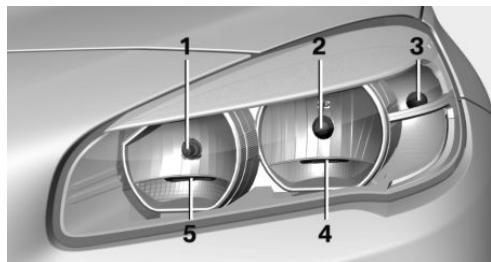
## Headlight adjustment

The adjustments of the headlight can be affected by changing lights and lamps. Have the headlight adjustment checked and if necessary corrected by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Front lights, replacing the bulbs

### Halogen headlights

#### Overview



- 1 High-beam headlights, headlight flasher
- 2 Low-beam headlights
- 3 Turn indicator
- 4 Side lights/daytime driving lights
- 5 Side lights/daytime driving lights

### Parking lights, daylight driving lights

The side lights and daytime driving lights use LED technology.

Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

### Access to turn indicators, low-beam headlights, high-beam headlights/headlight flash

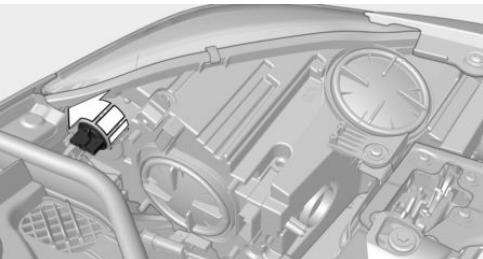
Follow the general instructions, see page [225](#).

Open the bonnet.

## Turn indicator

21 Watts bulb, PY21W.

1. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove.

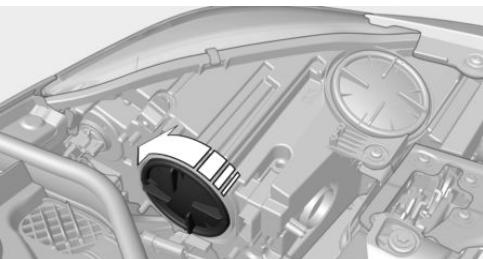


2. Press the bulb gently into the fitting, turn anticlockwise and remove.
3. Fit new bulb and bulb holder in the reverse sequence.

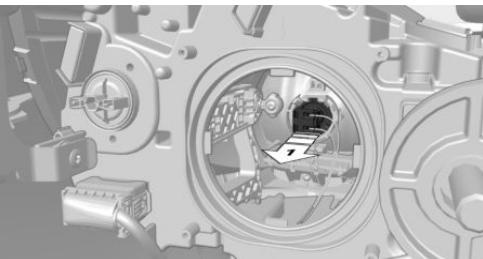
### Low-beam headlights

Bulb 55 watts, H7LL.

1. Turn the cover anticlockwise and remove.



2. Pull bulb holder off straight backwards, arrow 1, and remove.



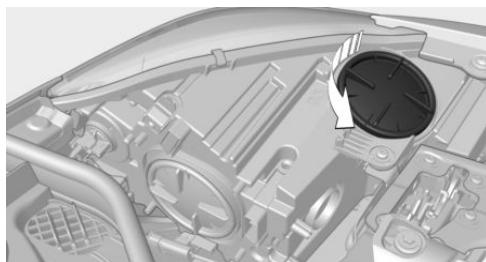
3. Carefully remove bulb from bulb holder.

4. Fit new bulb with bulb holder in the reverse sequence.  
When doing this, position lug of bulb correctly in headlight housing and feel bulb holder engage.
5. Close the headlight casing with the lid. Ensure that the lid engages.

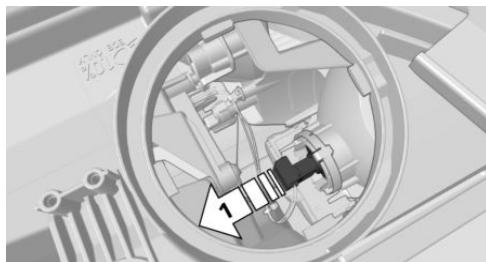
#### High-beam headlights/headlight flasher

H7 bulb, 55 watts.

1. Turn the cover anticlockwise and remove.



2. Pull bulb holder off straight backwards, arrow 1, and remove.

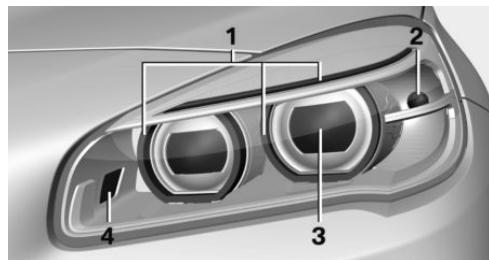


3. Carefully remove bulb from bulb holder.
4. Fit new bulb with bulb holder in the reverse sequence.  
When doing this, position lug of bulb correctly in headlight housing and feel bulb holder engage.
5. Close the headlight casing with the lid. Ensure that the lid engages.

## LED headlights

### Overview

### Front lights



- 1 Side lights/daytime driving lights
- 2 Turn indicator
- 3 Low-beam headlights, high-beam headlights/headlight flash
- 4 Cornering light

### Front lights

The following lights are designed in LED technology:

- ▷ High-beam headlights.
- ▷ Side lights/daytime driving lights.
- ▷ Low-beam headlights.
- ▷ Cornering light.

Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

### Turn indicator

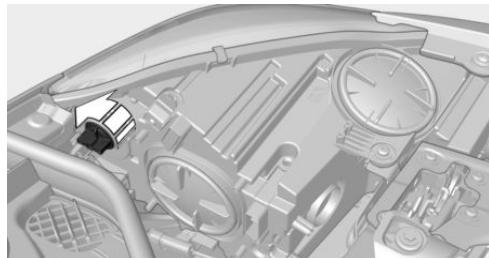
Bulb 21 watts, PY21W SV.

### Access to turn indicator

Follow the general information, see page [225](#).

Open the bonnet.

- Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove.



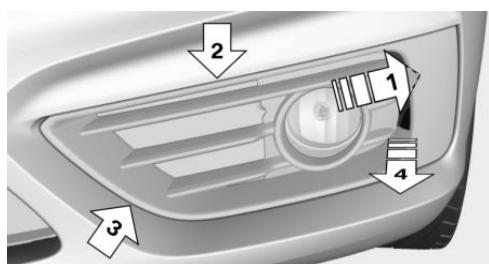
- Press the bulb gently into the fitting, turn anticlockwise and remove.
- Fit new bulb and bulb holder in the reverse sequence.

## Front fog lights

Follow the general information, see page [225](#).

H8 bulb, 35 watts.

- Reach into opening in cover, arrow 1.

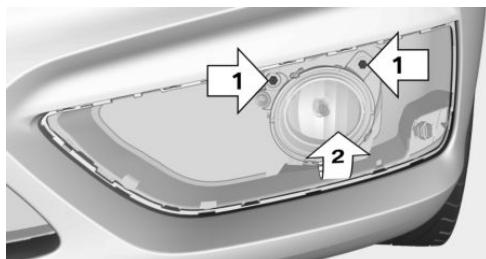


- Pull cover off forward. When doing this, release the top attachments, arrow 2, and the bottom attachments, arrow 3.

Remove cover, arrow 4.

- With rear of screwdriver from on-board toolkit, unscrew both mounting screws, arrow 1, of headlight housing.

Pull headlight housing up and out of bumper, arrow 2.

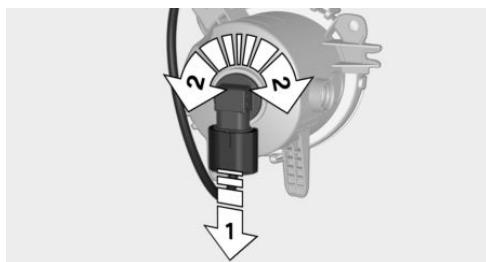


- Pull plug off bulb, arrow 1.

Turn bulb, arrow 2.

- ▷ Left side of vehicle: turn clockwise.
- ▷ Right side of vehicle: turn anticlockwise.

Remove bulb.



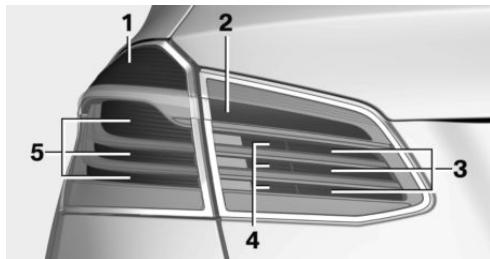
- Fit new bulb in reverse sequence and connect plug.

## Turn indicator in exterior mirror

Turn indicators in the exterior mirrors are designed in the LED technology. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

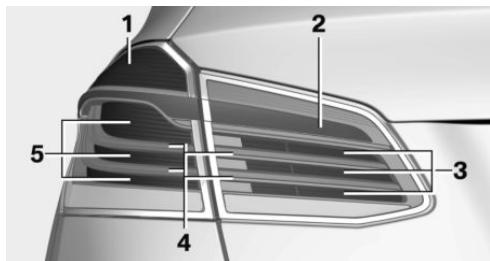
## Rear lights, replacing the bulbs

### Vehicles with halogen headlights



- 1 Turn indicator
- 2 Reversing lights
- 3 Rear fog light/tail light
- 4 Rear lights
- 5 Brake lights/rear lights

### Vehicles with LED headlights



- 1 Turn indicator
- 2 Reversing lights
- 3 Rear fog lights
- 4 Rear lights
- 5 Brake light

Rear light uses LED technology. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

## Replacing bulbs of outer rear lights

### General

Follow the general notes, see page 225.

Turn indicator: 21 watt bulb, P21WLL.

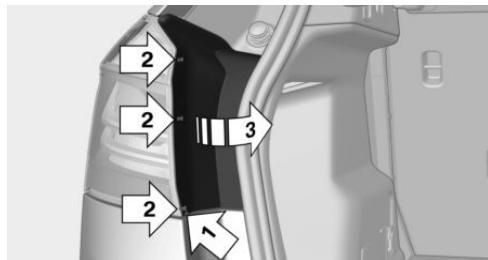
Brake light: bulb 21 watts, P21WLL.

### Removing rear light

1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove cover. Cover is only attached with three plug connections, arrow 2.

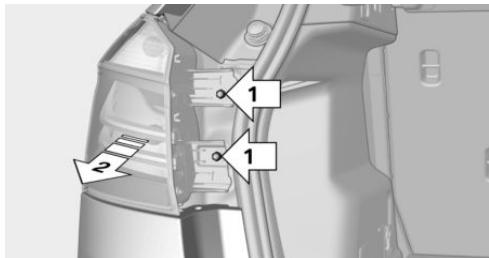
To remove, place the screwdriver from the on-board tool kit between the cover and body, arrow 1. Make sure that the paint is not damaged.

Pry cover out of plug connections and remove, arrow 3.



3. Unscrew both nuts, arrow 1, of outer rear light. To unscrew, it is possible to use the handle of the screwdriver from the on-board tool kit.

Carefully remove rear light forwards, arrow 2, from body. Make sure that cables are not damaged.

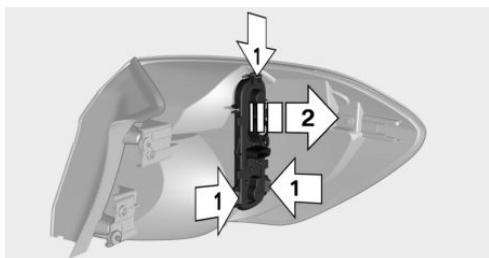


- Pull plug off bulb holder by disconnecting cables from rear light.

### Replacing the lamps

- Unscrew three attachments, arrow 1, on bulb holder.

Remove bulb holder from rear light, arrow 2.

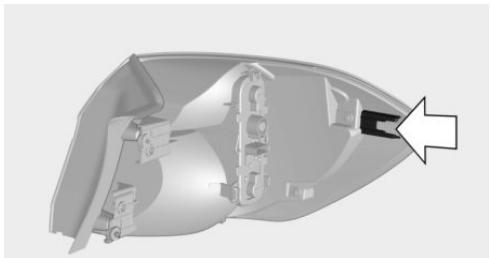


- Press the faulty bulb gently into the fitting, turn anticlockwise and remove.
  - ▷ Upper bulb: turn indicator.
  - ▷ Lower bulb: brake light.
- To use the new bulb and attach the bulb holder, proceed in the opposite sequence. Ensure that the bulb holder engages in all fastenings.

### Installing rear light

- Connect plug and fit cables into rear light.

- Position rear light with lug on the mounting point on the body and push onto both threaded pins.



- Press on rear light flush and tighten both nuts. Install cover.

### Lights in the tailgate

#### Vehicles with halogen headlights

Follow the general information, see page [225](#).

Reversing light: bulb 21 watts, P21WLL

Rear fog light: bulb 21 watts, H21WLL

Rear light: bulb 5 watts, P21WLL

#### Vehicles with LED headlights

Follow the general information, see page [225](#).

Reversing light: bulb 21 watts, P21WLL

Rear fog light: bulb 21 watts, H21WLL

### Access to the lights

- Open the tailgate.
- Pull out cover on handle recess.

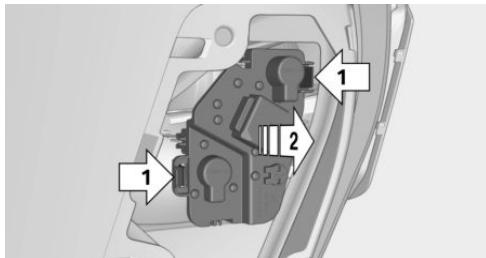


- Remove the plug from the bulb holder.

## Changing reversing light, rear fog light and tail light

- Unfasten both attachments, arrow 1, on bulb holder.

Remove bulb holder from rear light, arrow 2.



- Press the faulty bulb gently into the fitting, turn anticlockwise and remove.

- ▷ Upper bulb: reversing light.
- ▷ Lower bulb: rear fog light.

Only vehicles with halogen headlights:

- ▷ Lower bulb, 5 watts: tail light.

## Installing lamp holder

- To use the new bulb and attach the bulb holder, proceed in the opposite sequence. Connect plug to bulb holder.
- Make sure bulb holder is seated correctly and firmly.

## Centre brake light and number plate lights

Follow the general information, see page 225.

These lights use LED technology. Contact a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop in the case of a defect.

## Wheel change

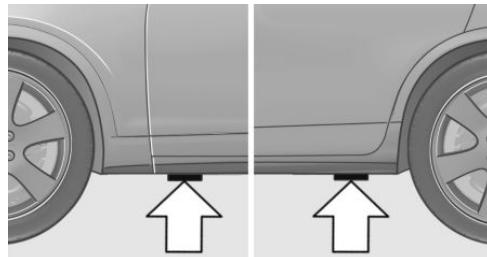
### Notes

For tyres with emergency running properties or when using sealants, immediate wheel change for loss of tyre pressure in case of breakdown is not required.

No spare wheel is available in the vehicle.

The tools for changing wheels are available as optional accessories from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

### Jack mounting points



The jack mounting points are located in the illustrated positions.

 Vehicle jack: Australian/New Zealand standard AS/NZS 2693

2007 – "Vehicle jacks" contains following warning note which BMW hereby adopts: '... no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack'.

The jack supplied with your vehicle should not be used for any purpose other than wheel changing and should never be used in conjunction with a vehicle support stand. Raising the vehicle for the purpose of inspection should only be performed in a controlled workshop environment on a hoist by trained personnel.

The following warning instructions from standard AS/NZS 2693:2007 are repeated here: the jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible. It is recommended that the

wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

The jack of your BMW is maintenance-free.

Please observe the information marked on the jack.◀

## Emergency wheel

### Safety measures

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a solid surface and as far away from moving traffic as possible. Switch on hazard warning lights.
- ▶ Apply parking brake and engage selector lever position P.
- ▶ Allow all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and guide them out of the danger area, for example behind the crash barrier.
- ▶ If applicable, set up warning triangle at the correct distance or switch on hazard warning lights.
- ▶ Only change the wheel on a level, firm and slip-free surface. On soft or slippery ground, for example, snow, ice, tiles or similar, the vehicle or jack may slide away to the side.
- ▶ Do not put any wooden blocks or similar underneath the jack, otherwise it cannot reach its carrying capacity due to the restricted height.
- ▶ If the vehicle is raised, do not lie underneath the vehicle and do not start the engine, otherwise there is danger of death.

### Note

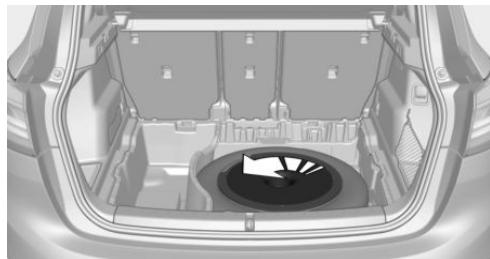


#### WARNING

The jack is only optimised for lifting the vehicle and for use with the jacking points on the vehicle. Danger of injury. Do not lift another vehicle or other items with the jack.◀

## Removing emergency wheel

Emergency wheel and tools are located under boot floor.



1. Undo wing stud.
2. Remove cover.
3. Remove tool holder.
4. Remove emergency wheel.

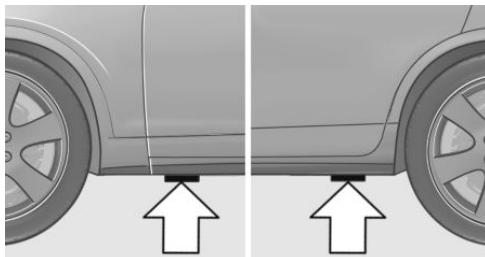
## Preparing for wheel change

1. Follow the safety instructions, see page [232](#).
2. With the supporting wedge from the on-board tool kit, secure the vehicle against rolling away by putting on the front wheel of the opposite side. Place the supporting wedge behind the front wheel of the opposite side.
3. Undo the wheel studs by half a turn.  
Thiefproof wheel studs, see page [233](#).

## Raising vehicle

1. Put the jack into the jacking point closest to the wheel, so that the jack base is verti-

cally underneath the jacking point with the entire surface on the ground.



2. Insert the jack head when cranking up into the square depth of the jacking point.
3. Crank up until the relevant wheel has been lifted off the ground.

## Wheel fitting

Only fit one emergency wheel.

1. Unscrew the wheel studs and remove the wheel.
2. Put on the new wheel or emergency wheel and loosely tighten at least two studs crosswise.  
If non-original BMW light alloy wheels are fitted, the wheel studs belonging to the wheels may also have to be used.
3. Loosely tighten the remaining wheel studs and then tighten all the studs well crosswise.
4. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.

## After changing the wheel

1. Tighten the wheel studs crosswise. The tightening torque is 140 Nm, approximately 101 lb ft.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the boot.  
Due to its size, the faulty wheel cannot be accommodated under the boot floor.
3. Check tyre inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as necessary.
4. Reinitialise runflat indicator.

Reset Tyre Pressure Monitor.

5. Check the tight fit of the wheel studs using a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Replace damaged tyres as soon as possible.

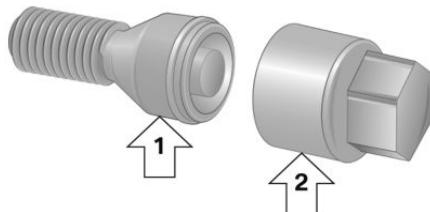
## Driving with emergency wheel

### **WARNING**

The emergency wheel has special dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, the driving properties may change at higher speeds, for example reduced directional stability when braking, longer braking distance and modified self-steering behaviour in the limit range. Danger of accidents. Drive with care and do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h, 50 mph.◀

## Thiefproof wheel studs

The adapter of the thiefproof wheel studs can be found in the tool kit or in an oddments tray in the tool kit.



- ▷ Wheel stud, arrow 1.
- ▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

## Removing

1. Place the adapter on the wheel stud.
2. Unscrew wheel stud.

After reattaching the wheel stud, remove the adapter again.

# Car battery

## Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The quantity of acid filled is sufficient for the lifetime of the battery.

More information regarding the battery can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Replacing the battery



### ATTENTION

Vehicle batteries that are classified as unsuitable may damage systems or result in functions no longer being carried out. Danger of damage to property. Only use vehicle batteries that have been classified as suitable by the vehicle manufacturer.◀

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having the vehicle battery registered with the vehicle by a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop to ensure that all comfort functions are fully available and eventual Check Control messages of these comfort functions are no longer displayed anymore.

## Recharging the battery

### General

Ensure the battery is sufficiently charged to guarantee the entire lifetime of the battery.

In the following cases, charging the battery is necessary:

- ▷ When making frequent short journeys.
- ▷ When leaving for periods of longer than one month.
- ▷ Steptronic transmission: when leaving for long periods in selector lever position D, R or N.

## Notes



### ATTENTION

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can operate with high voltages and high currents, which can overload or damage the 12 volt on-board network. Danger of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-starting connections in the engine compartment.◀

## Jump-starting connections

Recharge the battery only with the engine stopped, via the jump-starting connections, see page [238](#), in the engine compartment.

## Battery charger

Battery chargers developed especially for the vehicle and attuned to the on-board network can be obtained from Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Power failure

Following an electrical power outage, some equipment will have to be reinitialised or individual settings will need to be updated, for example:

- ▷ Seat and mirror memory: re-save positions.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Glass Roof: initialise system, see page [50](#).

## Disposing of the old battery



Dispose of old batteries at a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop or hand them into an authorised collecting point.

Batteries filled with acid should be transported and saved upright. Protect batteries against falling over when in transit.

## Fuses

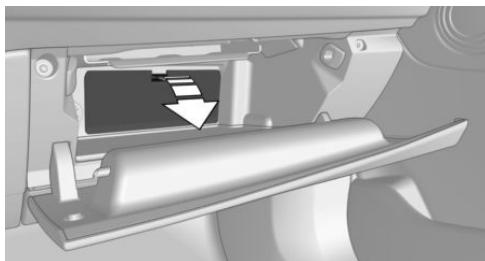
### Note

#### WARNING

Incorrect or repaired fuses can overload electrical cables and components. Fire risk. Do not repair blown fuses or renew them by fuses with a different colour or amp rating.◀

Plastic tweezers and details of the fuse assignment can be found with the fuses in the glove box.

### In the glove box



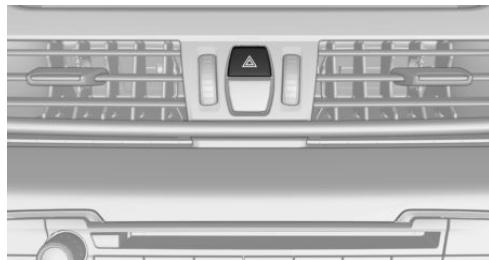
Pivot the flap down, see arrow.

# Help in the event of a breakdown

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Hazard warning lights



The button is located in the centre console.

## Intelligent emergency call

### Principle

This system can be used for sending an emergency call in emergency situations.

### General

Press the SOS button in an emergency only.

Even if no emergency call through BMW is possible, in some cases an emergency call may still be set up to a public emergency call number. This depends on factors such as the specific mobile telephone network and the national regulations.

For technical reasons, it might not be possible to make an emergency call in highly adverse conditions.

### Overview



SOS button in roof lining

### Requirements

- ▷ SIM card integrated into the vehicle is activated.
- ▷ Radio ready state is switched on.
- ▷ Emergency call system is functional.

### Making an emergency call

1. Briefly press the cover flap to open it.
  2. Press the SOS button until the LED on the button is illuminated green.
    - ▷ LED illuminated green: emergency call activated.
- If a cancellation request is shown on the display, the emergency call can be cancelled.
- If the situation permits, wait in the vehicle until voice contact has been established.
- ▷ LED flashes green when the connection to the emergency number has been established.

When an emergency call is sent via BMW, data is sent to the emergency call centre in order to decide what rescue measures are

required. For example, the current position of the vehicle, if this can be determined. If questions posed by the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are automatically initiated.

- ▷ If the LED is flashing green but the emergency call centre can no longer be heard over the loudspeaker, you may still be able to be heard by the emergency call centre.

## Automatically activating emergency calls

In certain circumstances, an emergency call may be placed automatically immediately after a serious accident. An automatic emergency call is not influenced by pressing the SOS button.

## Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located inside the tailgate.

Move the warning triangle to the side and remove it.

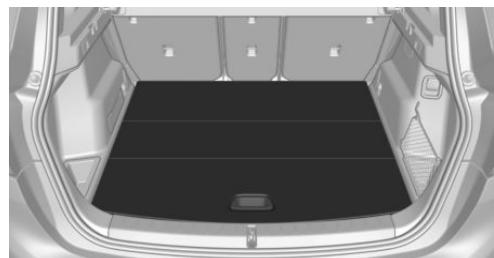
## First-aid kit

### Note

The longevity of some items is limited.

Check the use-by dates of the contents regularly and replace any items that have expired in good time.

## Storage



First-aid kit is located under boot floor.

## Starting assistance

### General

If the vehicle battery is discharged, the engine can be started using two jump leads from another vehicle's battery. Use only jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps.

### Information



#### DANGER

Touching live components can result in an electric shock. Danger of injury or life. Do not touch any components that could be live.◀

Do not deviate from the procedure described below, otherwise personal injury could result or both vehicles could be damaged.

### Preparations



#### ATTENTION

Contact between the bodies of the two vehicles can result in a short circuit during starting assistance. Danger of damage to property. Make sure there is no contact between the bodies.◀

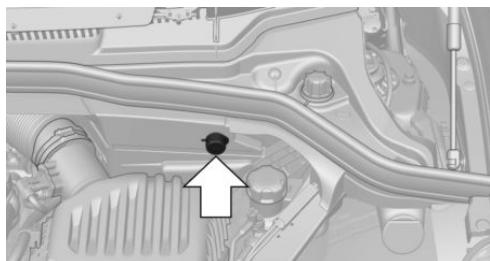
1. Check whether the battery in the other vehicle shows 12 volts. Information about the voltage is provided on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the donor vehicle.

- Switch off any electrical systems in both vehicles.

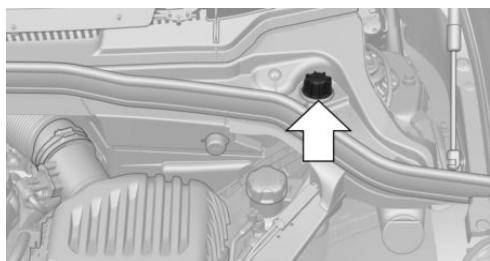
## Jump-starting connections

### **WARNING**

Connecting the jump leads in the wrong sequence can cause sparks. Danger of injury. Comply with the correct sequence when connecting up.►



The jump-starting connection in the engine compartment serves as the positive battery terminal.



A special connection on the body serves as battery negative terminal.

## Connecting the cables

- Open the covers of the BMW jump-starting connections.
- Connect a terminal clamp on the positive/+ jump lead to the positive terminal of the battery or the corresponding jump-starting connection on the donor vehicle.
- Connect the other terminal clamp to the battery's positive terminal or to the corre-

sponding jump-starting connection on the vehicle to be started.

- Connect a terminal clamp on the negative/-jump lead to the negative terminal of the battery or the corresponding engine or body earth connection on the donor vehicle.
- Connect the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery or to a ground/earth connection on the corresponding engine or body of the vehicle to be started.

## Starting the engine

Do not use the spray products sold as starting aids.

- Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to run for a few minutes at a slightly increased idle speed.  
For diesel-engined vehicles to be started: allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run for approx. 10 minutes.
- Start the engine of the vehicle to be started as normal.  
If an initial attempt to start the engine fails, wait several minutes until the flat battery has been recharged to a slightly greater degree.
- Allow both engines to run for a few minutes.
- Disconnect the jump leads in the opposite order from that in which they were originally attached.

Check the battery if necessary and have it recharged.

## Tow-starting and towing

### Information



#### WARNING

Due to system limitations, there may be malfunctions of individual functions when tow-starting/towing with activated Intelligent Safety Systems, for example front-end collision warning with light braking function. Danger of accidents. Switch off all Intelligent Safety Systems before tow-starting/towing.◀

### Manual gearbox

Gearshift lever in idle position.

### Being towed



#### ATTENTION

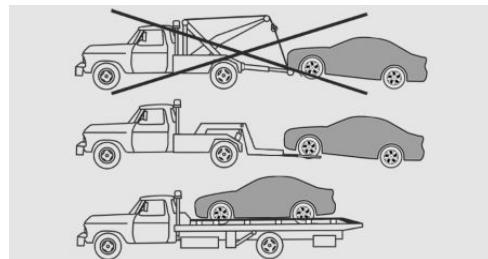
If a parking brake cannot be manually unlocked, the vehicle cannot be moved or towed. Danger of damage to property. Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.◀

Observe the following notes:

- ▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on, otherwise low-beam headlights, rear lights, turn indicators and wipers would not be available.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, otherwise the steering can turn.
- ▷ When the engine is not running, there is no power assistance and the brake servo is out of action. The steering and brakes will require extra effort to operate.
- ▷ Greater steering wheel movements are necessary.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the towed vehicle, otherwise it may be unable to keep the towed vehicle reliably under control.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of on 50 km/h, 30 mph.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km, 30 miles.

### Towing truck

#### With driven front axle



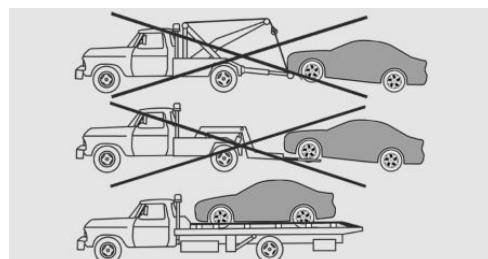
Have the vehicle transported by a towing truck with a hoisting frame, or hoisted onto a loading platform.



#### ATTENTION

Raising the vehicle at the towing eye, body or suspension components can cause damage to vehicle parts. Danger of damage to property. Raise vehicle with suitable fixtures.◀

#### With xDrive



Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.



#### ATTENTION

If the vehicle is towed with an individually lifted axle, the vehicle can be damaged. Danger of damage to property. Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.◀



## ATTENTION

Raising the vehicle at the towing eye, body or suspension components can cause damage to vehicle parts. Danger of damage to property. Raise vehicle with suitable fixtures.◀

### **Steptronic transmission without xDrive: transporting the vehicle**

#### **Note**

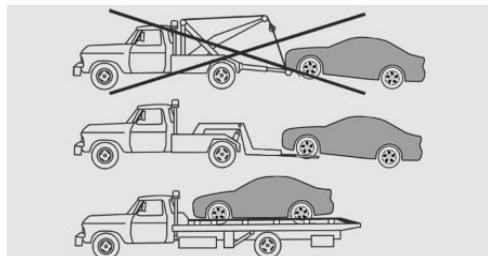
The vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are in contact with the ground.



## ATTENTION

If the vehicle is towed with a lifted rear axle, the vehicle can be damaged. Danger of damage to property. Only have the vehicle towed with a lifted front axle or transported on a load platform.◀

### **Towing truck**



Have the vehicle transported by a towing truck with a hoisting frame, or hoisted onto a loading platform.



## ATTENTION

Raising the vehicle at the towing eye, body or suspension components can cause damage to vehicle parts. Danger of damage to property. Raise vehicle with suitable fixtures.◀

Use the towing eye screwed into the socket at the front of the vehicle for manoeuvring only.

### **Pushing vehicle**

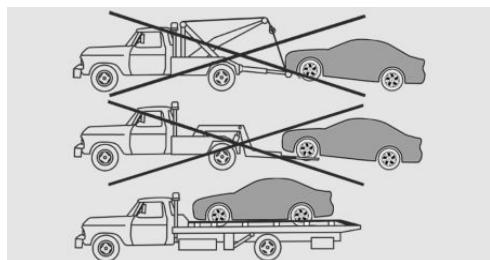
Unlock the transmission lockout manually, see page 85, if necessary to manoeuvre the vehicle out of a danger area.

### **Steptronic transmission with xDrive: transporting the vehicle**

#### **Note**

Do not attempt to have the vehicle towed.

### **Towing truck**



Only have the vehicle transported on a load platform.



## ATTENTION

Raising the vehicle at the towing eye, body or suspension components can cause damage to vehicle parts. Danger of damage to property. Raise vehicle with suitable fixtures.◀

Use the towing eye screwed into the socket at the front of the vehicle for manoeuvring only.

### **Pushing vehicle**

Unlock the transmission lockout manually, see page 85, if necessary to manoeuvre the vehicle out of a danger area.

## Towing other vehicles

### Notes



#### WARNING

If the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is less than that of the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye can be pulled off, or the vehicle may no longer be controllable. Danger of accidents! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is more than the weight of the vehicle to be towed.◀



#### ATTENTION

If the tow bar or the towing rope is not attached correctly, other vehicle parts can be damaged. Danger of damage to property. Attach the tow bar or towing rope to the towing eye correctly.◀

- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning lights, depending on local regulations.
- ▷ If the vehicle's electrical system has failed, the vehicle being towed must be made identifiable to following vehicles, for instance by placing an indicating label or the warning triangle in the rear window.

### Tow bar

The towing eyes of both vehicles should be on the same side.

If it is impossible to avoid attaching the tow bar at an angle, note the following:

- ▷ Tow bar clearance may be restricted when cornering.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is attached offset.

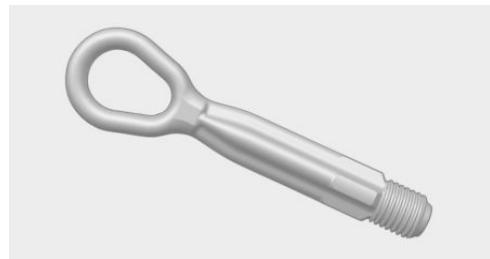
### Towing rope

Ensure that the towing rope is taut when the towing vehicle moves off.

For towing, use nylon ropes or straps, as these will help to avoid sudden tensile loads.

## Towing eye

### General



Always have the screw-on towing eye on board the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed into the front or rear end of the vehicle.

The towing eye together with the on-board tool kit, see page [224](#), is located in the boot.

### Notes



#### ATTENTION

If the towing eye is not used as intended, the vehicle or towing eye is damaged. Danger of damage to property. Observe the notes on using the towing eye.◀

Using the towing eye:

- ▷ Use only the towing eye supplied with the vehicle, and make sure that it is screwed in fully and is tight.
- ▷ Only use the towing eye for towing on normal roads (in other words not off-road).
- ▷ Use the towing eye screwed into the socket at the front of the vehicle for manoeuvring only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loads on the towing eye, for example do not raise the vehicle at the towing eye.

## Thread for towing eye



Press the marking on the edge of the cover to press it out.

## Tow-starting

### Steptronic transmission

Do not attempt to tow-start or push-start the vehicle.

Due to the Steptronic transmission, it is not possible to start the engine by towing.

Have the cause of the starting difficulties rectified.

### Manual gearbox

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine using starting assistance, see page 237. Only tow-start when the engine is cold if your vehicle has a catalytic converter.

1. Switching on hazard warning lights, please observe country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on ignition, see page 72.
3. Engage 3rd gear.
4. Tow-start with the clutch depressed and release the clutch slowly. Depress the clutch again immediately after the engine starts.
5. Stop in a suitable location, remove the tow bar or towing rope and switch off the hazard warning lights.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

# General care

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the selected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Washing the vehicle

### General

Regularly remove foreign bodies, for example, leaves, with the bonnet opened in the area beneath with windscreens.

Especially in winter, wash the vehicle more frequently. Very high levels of dirt and spreading salt can cause damage to the vehicle.

### Steam-jet cleaners and high-pressure cleaners

#### Notes

#### ATTENTION

When cleaning with high-pressure cleaners, excessive pressure or excessive temperatures can damage various components. Danger of damage to property. Ensure a sufficient distance and do not spray for an extended period of time. Comply with the instructions for the high-pressure cleaner.◀

### Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 60 °C/140 °F.
- ▷ Minimum distance to sensors, cameras, seals: 30 cm, approx. 12 in.

- ▷ Minimum distance to the Glass Roof: 80 cm, approx. 31.5 in.

### Automatic car washes.

#### Notes

#### ATTENTION

The vehicle can be damaged if automatic washing bays or car washes are used incorrectly. Danger of damage to property. Observe the following notes:

- ▷ Textile car washes or systems using soft brushes are preferable, to avoid damage to the paintwork.
- ▷ Avoid washing bays or car washes with guide rails more than 10 cm, approximately 4 in high, to avoid damage to the body.
- ▷ Note maximum tyre width of the guide rail so as to avoid damage to tyres and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate rain sensor, if fitted, to avoid damage to the wiper system.◀

In some instances, depending on the interior movement detector of the alarm system, a false alarm may be triggered. Observe the notes on avoiding false alarm, see page 46.

To reduce false alarms from PDC, switch off automatic activation of PDC when obstacles are detected if necessary, for example in automatic car washes, see page 149.

### Entering a car wash

Follow the below steps so that the vehicle can be driven into a vehicle wash:

Manual gearbox:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage idle position.

3. Stop the engine.
4. Switch on ignition.

Steptronic transmission:

1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Make sure that the parking brake is released.
4. Stop the engine.

In this way the ignition remains switched on and a Check Control message is displayed.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside in selector lever position N. If an attempt is made to lock the vehicle, a signal sounds.

When starting engine with manual gearbox:

1. Press clutch pedal.
2. Press the start/stop button.

When starting engine with Steptronic transmission:

1. Press the brake.
2. Press the start/stop button.

## Headlights

- ▷ Do not rub them when dry or use abrasive or corrosive cleaning agents.
- ▷ Soak impurities such as insects with shampoo and wash off with water.
- ▷ Remove ice with a de-icer spray; do not use an ice scraper.

## After washing the car

After washing the car, drive it briefly and apply the brakes to dry them out; this is necessary to prevent reduced braking action, and also to avoid corrosion of the brake discs.

Completely remove residues on the wind-screens to avoid affecting visibility due to smearing, and to reduce wiping noise and wiper blade wear.

## Car care

### Care products

BMW recommend using care and cleaning products from BMW.



#### WARNING

Cleaning agents can contain hazardous substances or constitute a health risk. Danger of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Use only products that are intended for cleaning the vehicle's interior. Observe the notes on the pack.◀

### Vehicle paintwork

Regular care promotes driving safety and preserves your vehicle's value. Environmental effects in areas with higher air pollution or natural contaminations, for example tree resin or leaf dust, may have an effect on the vehicle paintwork. Base the frequency and extent of vehicle care on such factors.

Remove corrosive substances, such as run-off fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings immediately to avoid changes to the paint or discolourations.

### Leather care

Remove dust from the leather at regular intervals with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Dust and road dirt will otherwise become worked into pores and folds, causing considerable abrasion and causing the leather surface to become prematurely brittle.

In order to protect against discolouration, for example from clothing, clean and care for the leather approximately every two months.

Clean light-coloured leather more frequently as it has the tendency to soil faster.

Use leather cleaner, otherwise dirt and grease will attack the protective coating of the leather.

Suitable care products are available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another

qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

## Care of upholstery fabrics

Clean regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

In the event of heavy soiling, for example stains caused by drinks, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfibre cloth with suitable interior cleaning agents.

Clean upholstery materials over a large area up to the seams. Avoid strong rubbing.



### ATTENTION

Open Velcro fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. Danger of damage to property. Make sure that any Velcro fasteners on your clothing are closed.◀

## Care of special parts

### Light alloy wheels

Only when cleaning on the vehicle use neutral rim cleaner with a pH value of between 5 and 9. Do not use any rough cleaner or steam cleaner above 60 °C/140 °F. Observe the manufacturer's information.

Corrosive, acidic or alkaline cleaners may destroy the protective layer of neighbouring parts, such as brake discs, for example.

### Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean parts such as the radiator grille and door handles with plenty of water to which a shampoo may be added, particularly if exposed to road salt.

### Rubber parts

The surfaces of rubber parts can be contaminated or lose their shine due to environmental influences. Only use water and suitable care products for cleaning. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends genuine BMW care products.

Treat particularly stressed rubber parts at regular intervals with rubber care products. Do not use any silicone-based care products for treating rubber seals, otherwise these could be damaged and become a source of noise.

### Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood trims and fine wood parts with a damp cloth only. Then dry them with a soft cloth.

### Plastic parts

These include:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roof lining.
- ▷ Light covers.
- ▷ Glass cover of instrument cluster.
- ▷ Parts sprayed matt black.
- ▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Use a microfibre cloth to clean.

Slightly moisten the cloth with water.

Do not soak the roof lining.



### ATTENTION

Cleaning agents containing alcohol or solvents, such as nitro thinners, cold cleaners, fuel or similar can damage plastic parts. Danger of damage to property. Use a microfibre cloth to clean. Slightly moisten the cloth with water.◀

### Seat belts

Dirt on the seat belts can interfere with the action of the reel and represent a safety hazard.



### WARNING

Chemical cleaners can cause irreparable damage to the fabric of the seat belts. Lack of protective effect of the seat belts. Danger of injury or life. Only use a mild soap and water solution for cleaning the seat belts.◀

Clean only with a mild soap solution while still fitted to the vehicle.

Never allow seat belts to retract unless they are dry.

## Carpets and foot mats

### WARNING

Objects in the driver's footwell can restrict the pedal travel, or block a pedal that has been pressed. Danger of accidents. Stow items in the vehicle so that they are secure and cannot get into the driver's footwell. Only use floor mats that are appropriate for the vehicle and can be securely fastened to the floor. Do not use any loose floor mats, and do not place several floor mats on top of one another. Make sure that there is sufficient space for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely reattached after having been removed, for example for cleaning.◀

Floor mats can be removed from the vehicle to enable the interior to be cleaned more thoroughly.

In the event of heavy soiling, clean floor carpets using a microfibre cloth and water or textile cleaner. In doing so, rub back and forth in the direction of travel, otherwise the carpet can become tangled.

## Trailer tow hitch with removable ball linkage/mount for rear luggage rack

Keep the ball linkage and take-up clean.

Grease or oil bearing locations, sliding surfaces and the small balls on the take-up piston regularly with resin-free grease or oil.

Before using steam cleaner or high pressure cleaner on the vehicle, remove ball linkage and use a stopper in the take-up, see page 190.

Do not clean ball linkage with a steam cleaner or high pressure cleaner.

## Sensors/lenses of the camera

Clean sensors or lenses of the camera using a cloth moistened with a small amount of a glass detergent.

## Displays/screens/projection screen

### ATTENTION

Chemical cleaners, moisture or fluids of all kinds can damage the surface of displays and screens. Danger of damage to property. Use a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth to clean.◀

### ATTENTION

The surfaces of displays can be damaged due to improper cleaning. Danger of damage to property. Avoid applying excessive pressure and do not use abrasive materials.◀

Use a clean, anti-static microfibre cloth to clean.

With caked-on soiling on the projection screen of the Head-Up Display, moisten the microfibre cloth slightly with spirit. Extend projection screen, see page 103.

## Laying up out of use

When the vehicle is laid up for longer than three months, special measures are to be taken. Additional information is available from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.



U  
V  
W  
X  
Y  
Z  
R  
S  
T  
N  
M  
I  
J  
H  
G  
D  
A  
R  
E

## **Reference**

The section contains the technical data and the alphabetical index that will lead you to the desired information in the quickest manner possible.

# Technical data

## Vehicle equipment

This chapter describes all standard, national and special equipment provided in the model series. Equipment not available in the vehicle is therefore also described, for example the se-

lected special equipment or country variant. This also applies to safety-relevant functions and systems. Comply with the relevant national regulations when using the corresponding functions and systems.

## Note

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Handbook are indications. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to selected special equipment, country variant or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the permit documents, on indicating labels on

the vehicle or can be requested from a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

The information in the vehicle papers always takes precedence over the information in this Owner's Handbook.

## Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The heights specified do not take into account add-on parts such as a roof aerial, roof railing

or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to selected special equipment, tyres, loads and chassis design.

### BMW 2 Series Active Tourer

Width with mirrors	mm	2038
Width without mirrors	mm	1800
Height	mm	1555
Length	mm	4342
Wheelbase	mm	2670
Smallest turning circle dia.	m (ft)	11.3 (37.1)

## Weights

### 216i

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1395 (3075)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	1865 (4112)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	965 (2127)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	930 (2050)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

### 218i

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1395 (3075)
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1395 (3075)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1435 (3164)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1870 (4123)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1910 (4211)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	970 (2138)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1015 (2238)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	930 (2050)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 220i

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank  
90 % full, no optional extras

Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1475 (3252)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1505 (3318)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1930 (4255)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1960 (4321)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1020 (2249)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1055 (2326)
Rear axle load limit		
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 225i

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1505 (3318)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	1970 (4343)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1060 (2337)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	930 (2050)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 225i xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1585 (3494)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2045 (4508)

## 225i xDrive

Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1105 (2436)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	980 (2161)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 214d

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1425 (3142)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	1895 (4178)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1000 (2205)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	930 (2050)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 216d

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank 90 % full, no optional extras	kg (lb)	1440 (3175)
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1470 (3241)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1470 (3241)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	1905 (4200)
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1920 (4233)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1920 (4233)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1010 (2227)
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1030 (2271)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1030 (2271)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	930 (2050)

## 216d

Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 218d

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank  
90 % full, no optional extras

Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1450 (3197)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1485 (3274)
<b>Permitted gross weight</b>		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1920 (4233)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1955 (4310)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
<b>Front axle load limit</b>		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1025 (2260)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1060 (2337)
<b>Rear axle load limit</b>		
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 220d

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank  
90 % full, no optional extras

Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1480 (3263)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1505 (3318)
<b>Permitted gross weight</b>		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1955 (4310)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1975 (4354)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
<b>Front axle load limit</b>		

## 220d

Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1060 (2337)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1080 (2381)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	930 (2050)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 218d xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank  
90 % full, no optional extras

Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1540 (3395)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1560 (3439)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2010 (4431)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2030 (4475)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1065 (2348)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1085 (2392)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	980 (2161)
Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

## 220d xDrive

Kerb weight, ready for road, with 75 kg, 165 lb, load, tank kg (lb) 1585 (3494)  
90 % full, no optional extras

Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2045 (4508)
Load	kg (lb)	515 (1135)
Front axle load limit	kg (lb)	1105 (2436)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	980 (2161)

**220d xDrive**

Roof load	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Boot capacity	litres (cu ft)	468-1510 (16.5-53.3)

**Towing a trailer****216i**

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	695 (1532)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1100 (2425)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1100 (2425)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	1940 (4277)

**218i**

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	695 (1532)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1300 (2866)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1300 (2866)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
Permitted gross weight		

## 218i

Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1945 (4288)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	1985 (4376)

## 220i

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	730 (1609)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2005 (4420)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2035 (4486)

## 225i

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2045 (4508)

**225i xDrive**

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1090 (2403)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2120 (4674)

**214d**

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	705 (1554)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1200 (2646)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1200 (2646)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	1970 (4343)

**216d**

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	705 (1554)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1300 (2866)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1300 (2866)

## 216d

Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2005 (4420)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2035 (4486)

## 218d

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	725 (1598)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1300 (2866)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1300 (2866)
Maximum trailer nose weight		
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
Permitted gross weight		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	1995 (4398)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2030 (4475)

## 220d

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	735 (1620)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1500 (3307)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)

## 220d

Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1040 (2293)
<b>Permitted gross weight</b>		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2030 (4475)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2050 (4519)

## 218d xDrive

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)
Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1090 (2403)
<b>Permitted gross weight</b>		
Manual gearbox	kg (lb)	2085 (4597)
Steptronic transmission	kg (lb)	2105 (4641)

## 220d xDrive

Towing loads according to EU operating permit. Details on possible increases can be enquired with a Service Partner of the manufacturer or another qualified Service Partner or a specialist workshop.

Unbraked	kg (lb)	750 (1653)
With brake on upward gradient up to 12 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
With brake on upward gradient up to 8 %	kg (lb)	1600 (3527)
Maximum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	75 (165)
Minimum trailer nose weight	kg (lb)	25 (55)

**220d xDrive**

Rear axle load limit	kg (lb)	1090 (2403)
Permitted gross weight	kg (lb)	2120 (4674)

## Filling capacities

	Litres/imp. gal	Note
Fuel tank, approximately.	51.0/11.2	Fuel grade, see page <a href="#">204</a>
Larger fuel tank, approximately	61.0/13.4	Fuel grade, see page <a href="#">204</a>

# Appendix

Here is where any updates to the Owner's Handbook for the vehicle are listed.

## Updates after going to press

Updates have been made after the editorial deadline in these chapters of the printed Owner's Handbook.

- ▷ The right place for children: Children always in the rear, see page [64](#).
- ▷ Active pedestrian protection system: limits of the system, see page [114](#).



# Everything from A to Z

## Index

### A

- ABS, anti-lock braking system [132](#)  
ACC, Active Cruise Control [137](#)  
Acceleration assistant, see Launch Control [85](#)  
Accessories and parts [8](#)  
Activation, airbags [113](#)  
Active bonnet [114](#)  
Active Cruise Control, ACC [137](#)  
Active pedestrian protection system [114](#)  
Adaptive brake light, see Dynamic brake lights [130](#)  
Additives, oil [218](#)  
Adjust headlights [109](#)  
After washing the car [244](#)  
Age of tyres [208](#)  
Airbags [111](#)  
Airbags, indicator/warning lamp [112](#)  
Airbag switch, see Key switch for front passenger airbags [113](#)  
Air Conditioning [160, 162](#)  
Air conditioning system [160](#)  
Air distribution, manual [161, 164](#)  
Air flow, air conditioning [161](#)  
Air flow, automatic air conditioning [164](#)  
Air outlets, see Ventilation [165](#)  
Air pressure, tyres [206](#)  
Alarm, false [46](#)  
Alarm system [45](#)  
All-season tyres, see Winter tyres [208](#)  
Alternative oil grades [218](#)  
Ambient lighting [110](#)  
Anti-freeze protection, washer fluid [81](#)  
Anti-lock braking system, ABS [132](#)  
Anti-theft alarm system, see Alarm system [45](#)  
Anti-theft system, vehicle [36](#)  
Anti-theft system, wheel studs [233](#)  
Anti-trap mechanism, glass Roof [49](#)  
Anti-trap mechanism, windows [47](#)  
App, BMW Driver's Guide [6](#)  
Aquaplaning [183](#)  
Around the centre console [14](#)  
Around the headlining [15](#)  
Around the steering wheel [12](#)  
Arrival time [99](#)  
Ashtray [167](#)  
Attentiveness assistant [130](#)  
AUC, automatic air recirculation control [163](#)  
AUTO intensity [163](#)  
Automatic air conditioning [162](#)  
Automatic air recirculation control, AUC [163](#)  
Automatic anti-glare control, see High-beam assistance [108](#)  
Automatic Cruise Control with Stop & Go [137](#)  
Automatic driving lights control [106](#)  
Automatic locking [44](#)  
Automatic parking function [61](#)  
Automatic tailgate [39](#)  
Automatic transmission, see Steptronic transmission [83](#)  
AUTO program, automatic air conditioning [163](#)  
AUTO program, intensity [163](#)  
Auto Start Stop function [74](#)  
Average fuel consumption [98](#)  
Average speed [98](#)  
Axe load limit [251](#)  
Axe loads, weight [251](#)

### B

- Backrest contour, see Lumbar support [53](#)  
Backrest, seats [51](#)  
Backrest width [53](#)  
Back seat backrests, folding down [171](#)  
Back seats [54](#)  
Battery, vehicle [234](#)  
Belts, seat belts [55](#)  
Black ice, see Outside temperature warning [92](#)  
Block, power windows [48](#)  
Blower, see air flow [161](#)  
Blower, see Air flow [164](#)  
BMW Driver's Guide App [6](#)  
BMW homepage [6](#)  
BMW internet site [6](#)  
BMW Maintenance System [222](#)  
BMW Services [6](#)  
Bonnet [215](#)  
Bonus range, ECO PRO [196](#)  
Boot [170](#)  
Boot cover [170](#)  
Boot floor [171](#)  
Boot, storage space [178](#)

Bottle holder, see Cupholder 177  
 Bracket for rear luggage rack 190  
 Brake assist 132  
 Brake lights, adaptive 130  
 Brake lights, dynamic 130  
 Braking, notes 184  
 Braking safely 184  
 Breakdown Assist 236  
 Breakdown, wheel change 231  
 Brightness of the Control Display 102  
 Bulbs 225  
 Buttons on the steering wheel 12  
 Button, start/stop 72

**C**

Camera-Based Cruise Control, ACC 137  
 Camera, rear-view camera 153  
 Car battery 234  
 Car care 244  
 Care, displays 246  
 Care products 244  
 Care, vehicle 244  
 Cargo position, rear backrests 172  
 Car jack 231  
 Car key, see Remote control 32  
 Carpet, care 246  
 Carrying children safely 63  
 Car washes 243  
 Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 183  
 CBS, Condition Based Service 222  
 Central key, see Remote control 32  
 Central locking system 38

Central screen, see Control Display 16  
 Centre armrest 176  
 Centre console 14  
 Changes, technical, see Your own safety 8  
 Changing bulb, rear 229  
 Charcoal canister 164  
 Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 9  
 Check Control 88  
 Checking oil level electronically 216  
 Child's seats 63  
 Child locks 71  
 Children, carrying 63  
 Child restraints 63  
 Child seat classes, ISOFIX 66  
 Child seat mounting 65  
 Child seat mountings, ISO-FIX 66  
 Chrome parts, care 245  
 Cigarette lighter 167  
 Cleaning displays 246  
 Clock 92  
 Closing/opening using door lock 37  
 Closing/opening with remote control 36  
 Coasting 197  
 Coasting in idle 197  
 Cockpit 12  
 Cold start, see Engine start 73  
 Comfort Access 41  
 Comfort closing with the remote control 36  
 Comfort opening with the remote control 36  
 COMFORT program, driving dynamics 135  
 Compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 232  
 Compressor 210  
 Computer, see on-board computer 98

Condensation on windows 161, 164  
 Condensation under the vehicle 185  
 Condition Based Service, CBS 222  
 Confirmation signals 44  
 ConnectedDrive 6  
 ConnectedDrive services 6  
 Connecting electrical appliances 168  
 Contactless closing of tailgate 42  
 Contactless opening of tailgate 42  
 Continuing a journey with a flat tyre 117, 120  
 Control Display 16  
 Control Display, settings 101  
 Controller 17  
 Control systems, driving stability 132  
 Coolant 220  
 Cooling effect, maximum 163  
 Cooling function 161, 163  
 Cooling system 220  
 Cornering light 107  
 Corrosion of brake discs 184  
 Courtesy light when unlocking 36  
 Courtesy light with the vehicle locked 36  
 Cruise Control 147  
 Cruise Control, active 137  
 Cruise Control, see Camera-Based Cruise Control 137  
 Cupholder 177  
 Current fuel consumption 93

**D**

Damage, tyres 207  
 Damper Control, dynamic 134  
 Data, technical 250  
 Date 92

- Daytime driving lights 107  
Deactivation, airbags 113  
Defrosting, see Defrosting windows 164  
Defrosting windows 161, 164  
Defrost, see Defrosting windows 164  
Deleting personal data 22  
Diesel fuel 205  
Diesel particle filter 183  
Digital clock 92  
Dimensions 250  
Dimmable exterior mirrors 61  
Dimming rear-view mirror 61  
Dipped headlight, replacing bulbs 226  
Dipping headlights, see High-beam assistance 108  
Display, engine temperature 99  
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 109  
Displays, cleaning 246  
Displays, electronic, instrument cluster 87  
Disposal, coolant 221  
Disposal, vehicle battery 234  
Distance to destination 99  
Distance warning, see PDC 149  
Door key, see Remote control 32  
Door lock 37  
Downhill gradients 184  
Drinks holder, see Cupholder 177  
Drive experience switch 135  
Drive mode 135  
Drive-off assistant 136  
Driver assist, see Intelligent Safety 120  
Driving Excitement, SPORT 100  
Driving hints 183  
Driving information, general 183  
Driving information, running in 182  
Driving instruction, ECO PRO 196  
Driving into a car wash 243  
Driving lane lines, rear-view camera 153  
Driving lights control, automatic 106  
Driving stability control systems 132  
Driving style analysis 198  
Drying air, see Cooling function 161, 163  
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 132  
DTC, Dynamic Traction Control 133  
Dynamic brake lights 130  
Dynamic Damper Control 134  
Dynamic Stability Control, DSC 132  
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 133
- E**
- ECO PRO 194  
ECO PRO, bonus range 196  
ECO PRO display 194  
ECO PRO drive mode 194  
ECO PRO driving style analysis 198  
ECO PRO mode 194  
ECO PRO - program, driving dynamics 135  
ECO PRO tip 196  
Electrical power windows 46  
Electric steering wheel lock 62  
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 87  
Electronic oil measurement 216  
Electronic Stability Program, ESP, see DSC 132  
Emergency call 236  
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 203  
Emergency start function, engine start 33  
Emergency wheel 232  
Energy Control 93  
Energy recuperation 93  
Engine, automatic shut-off 74  
Engine, automatic start-stop function 74  
Engine compartment 214  
Engine coolant 220  
Engine idling when driving, coasting 197  
Engine oil 216  
Engine oil additives 218  
Engine oil change 219  
Engine oil filler neck 217  
Engine oil grades, alternative 218  
Engine oil grades, suitable 218  
Engine start 73  
Engine start with malfunction 33  
Engine temperature, display 99  
Entering letters and numbers 23  
ESP, Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 132  
Exhaust system 183  
Expanding the boot 171  
Extended BMW Online services 6  
Exterior mirror, automatically dimming 61  
Exterior mirrors 60  
External starting 237  
Eye for securing cable, trailer towing 192  
Eyes for securing load 187

**F**

Failure message, see Check Control 88  
 False alarm 46  
 Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 55  
 Fault displays, see Check Control 88  
 Favourites buttons, iDrive 22  
 Filler neck for engine oil 217  
 Fine wood, care 245  
 First-aid kit 237  
 Flat tyre, warning lamp 116, 119  
 Flooding 184  
 Floor carpet, care 246  
 Fog lights, replacing the lamps 228  
 Fold-down table in rear passenger compartment 169  
 Fold-out position, windscreen wiper 81  
 Foot brake 184  
 Foot mats, care 246  
 Four-wheel drive 134  
 Front airbags 111  
 Front-end collision warning with city braking function 121  
 Front fog lights 109  
 Front head restraints 57  
 Front lights 226  
 Front neck supports, see Head restraints 57  
 Front passenger airbags, de-activating/activating 113  
 Front passenger airbags, light 113  
 Front seat passenger back-rest, folding down 173  
 Front seats 51  
 Fuel 204  
 Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 98  
 Fuel filler flap 202

Fuel gauge 92  
 Fuel quality 204  
 Fuel recommendation 204  
 Fuel tank cap 202  
 Fuel, tank capacity 261  
 Fuse 235

**G**

Gearbox, manual gearbox 82  
 Gearbox, Steptronic transmission 83  
 Gear change, Steptronic transmission 83  
 Gearshift, manual gearbox 82  
 Gearshift, Steptronic transmission 83  
 General driving information 183  
 Glare protection 167  
 Glass Roof, see Panorama Glass Roof 48  
 Glove box 176  
 GPS positioning, vehicle position 102  
 Green diesel 205

**H**

Halogen headlights 226  
 Handbrake, see Parking brake 76  
 Hazard warning lights 236  
 Head airbags 111  
 Headlight courtesy delay feature 106  
 Headlight flasher 79  
 Headlight flasher, replacing the bulbs 227  
 Headlight lens 225  
 Headlights 226  
 Headlights, care 244  
 Headlining 15  
 Head restraints 51  
 Head-Up Display 102  
 Head-Up Display, care 246

Heavy transported load, stowing transported load 186  
 Help in driving off 136  
 High-beam assistance 108  
 High-beam headlights 79  
 High-beam headlights, replacing the bulbs 227  
 Hill Start Assist, see Drive-off assistant 136  
 Homepage 6  
 Horn 12  
 Hot exhaust system 183  
 HUD Head-Up Display 102

**I**

IBA Integrated Owner's Handbook in vehicle 27  
 Ice warning, see Outside temperature warning 92  
 Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 9  
 iDrive 16  
 Ignition key, see Remote control 32  
 Ignition off 72  
 Ignition on 72  
 Important considerations 63  
 Important information regarding the engine compartment 214  
 Independent ventilation 165  
 Indicator and warning lamps, see Check Control 88  
 Indicator lights, see Check Control 88  
 Indicators, see Turn indicators 78  
 Individual air distribution 161, 164  
 Individual settings, see Personal Profile 34  
 Inflation pressure, tyres 206  
 Inflation pressure warning, tyres 118

Info Display, see on-board computer **98**

Information on no passing **95**

Information on speed limit **95**

Initialise, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM **116**

Initialising, runflat indicator RPA **118**

Instrument cluster **87**

Instrument cluster, electronic displays **87**

Instrument cluster switch, see Turn indicators **78**

Instrument cluster switch, see Wiper system **79**

Instrument lighting **109**

Integrated key **32**

Integrated Owner's Handbook in vehicle **27**

Intelligent emergency call **236**

Intelligent Safety **120**

Intensity, AUTO Automatic program **163**

Interior light **110**

Interior light when unlocking **36**

Interior light with the vehicle locked **36**

Interior movement detector **46**

Intermittent mode **80**

Internet site **6**

Interval display, service requirements **93**

ISOFIX child seat mountings **66**

## J

Jack mounting points **231**

Journey computer **99**

Joystick, Steptronic transmission **83**

Jump-starting connection, starting assistance **238**

Jump starting, see starting assistance **237**

## K

Key/remote control **32**

Keyless Go, see Comfort Access **41**

Key memory, see Personal Profile **34**

Key switch for front passenger airbags **113**

Kick-down, Steptronic transmission **83**

## L

Labelling of recommended tyres **208**

Label, run-flat tyres **209**

Lane boundary, warning **127**

Lane departure warning **127**

Language, on the control display **101**

Lashing eyes, securing load **187**

Lashing straps, securing load **187**

Launch Control **85**

Laying up out of use **246**

Laying up, vehicle **246**

Leather, care **244**

LEDs, light-emitting diodes **225**

Left-hand traffic, light setting **109**

Lenses of camera, care **246**

Light alloy wheels, care **245**

Light-emitting diodes, LEDs **225**

Lighter **167**

Lighting **105**

Lights **105**

Light switch **105**

LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter **128**

Load **186**

Loading position **171**

Loads **186**

Lock, door **37**

Locking/unlocking using door lock **37**

Locking/unlocking with remote control **36**

Locking, automatic **44**

Locking, doors and windows **71**

Locking settings **44**

Locking via the tailgate **39**

Lock, wheel studs **233**

Low-beam headlights **105**

Lower back support **53**

Luggage net **173**

Luggage rack, see Roof rack **187**

Lumbar support **53**

## M

Maintenance **222**

Maintenance requirement **222**

Maintenance, service requirements **93**

Maintenance System BMW **222**

Malfunction displays, see Check Control **88**

Manual air distribution **161, 164**

Manual air flow **161, 164**

Manual gearbox **82**

Manual operation, door lock **37**

Manual operation, exterior mirrors **60**

Manual operation, fuel filler flap **203**

Manual operation, Park Distance Control, PDC **150**

Manual operation, rear-view camera **153**

Manual shift mode, Step-tronic transmission 84  
**M**Manual Speed Limiter 128  
 Maximum cooling effect 163  
 Maximum speed, winter tyres 209  
 Memory, seat, mirror 59  
 Menu in the instrument cluster 97  
 Menus, see iDrive operating principle 18  
 Message of a flat tyre 116, 119  
 Messages, see Check Control 88  
 Microfilter 162, 164  
 Minimum tread depth, tyres 207  
 Mirror, memory 59  
 Mirrors 60  
 Mobile communication equipment 183  
 Mobility system 210  
 Moisture in the headlight 225  
 Monitor, see Control Display 16  
 Mounting child restraints 65  
 Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 12  
 Multimedia 6

**N**

Navigation 6  
 Net 173  
 Neutral cleaner, see rim cleaner 245  
 New wheels and tyres 208  
 No Passing Information 95  
 Nose weight 256  
 Notes 6

**O**

OBD, see on-board diagnosis, OBD 223

Obstacle marking, rear-view camera 154  
 Octane number, see Petrol grade 204  
 Odometer 92  
 Office 6  
 Oil 216  
 Oil additives 218  
 Oil change 219  
 Oil change interval, service requirements 93  
 Oil filler neck 217  
 Oil grades, alternative 218  
 Oil grades, suitable 218  
 Old battery, disposing 234  
 On-board computer 98  
 On-board diagnosis, OBD 223  
 On-board monitor, see Control Display 16  
 On-board toolkit 224  
 Opening/closing using door lock 37  
 Opening and closing 32  
 Opening and closing, without remote control 37  
 Opening and closing with remote control 36  
 Operating menus, iDrive 16  
 Operating principle, iDrive 16  
 Outside air, see AUC 163  
 Outside temperature display 92  
 Outside temperature warning 92

**P**

Paintwork, vehicle 244  
 Panorama Glass Roof 48  
 Park assistant 155  
 Park Distance Control PDC 149  
 Parked vehicle, condensation 185  
 Parking aid, see PDC 149

Parking assistant 155  
 Parking brake 76  
 Parking lights 106  
 Particle filter 183  
 Part replacement 224  
 Parts and accessories 8  
 Passenger's mirror, tilting down 61  
 PDC Park Distance Control 149  
 Pedestrian protection system, active 114  
 Performance Control 134  
 Permitted gross weight while towing a trailer 256  
 Personal data, delete 22  
 Personal Profile 34  
 Personal profile, export profile 35  
 Person warning with city braking function 124  
 Petrol 204  
 Petrol grade 204  
 Place for children 63  
 Plasters, see First-aid kit 237  
 Plastic, care 245  
 Pockets in the doors 176  
 Power failure 234  
 Power windows 46  
 Prescribed engine oil grades 218  
 Pressure check, tyres 115  
 Pressure, tyres 206  
 Pressure warning, tyres 118  
 Profiles, Personal Profile 34  
 Protection function, glass Roof 49  
 Protection function, windows 47  
 Puncture, runflat indicator RPA 118

**Q**

Queue assistant 143

**R**

Radio 6  
Radio-control key, see Remote control 32  
Radio ready state 72  
Radio signals 183  
Rain sensor 80  
Range 93  
Rape seed methyl ester, RME 205  
Rear backrests, folding down 171  
Rear fog lights 109  
Rear head restraints 58  
Rear lights 229  
Rear neck supports, see Head restraints 58  
Rear seat backrest angle 54  
Rear seats 54  
Rear-view camera 152  
Rear-view mirror, automatic-dim 61  
Rear-view mirror, manual-dim 61  
Rear window heating 161, 164  
Recirculated-air mode 161, 163  
Recirculating air filter 164  
Recirculation, see Recirculated-air mode 161, 163  
Recommended tyre makes 208  
Recycling 223  
Refuelling 202  
Remaining distance 93  
Remedying flat tyres 209  
Remote control/key 32  
Remote control, malfunction 37  
Replacement fuse 235  
Replacement of parts 224  
Replacement of wheels/tyres 208

Replacement wheel, see Emergency wheel 232  
Replacing bulbs 225  
Replacing bulbs, front 226  
Replacing parts 224  
Replacing the battery, vehicle battery 234  
Replacing the battery, vehicle remote control 33  
Replacing wiper blades 224  
RES button, see Camera-based Cruise Control, ACC 137  
RES button, see Cruise Control 147  
Reserve warning, see Range 93  
Reservoir for washer fluid 81  
Reset, Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM 116  
Restraint systems for children 63  
Retreaded tyres 208  
Reuse 223  
Reversing light 229  
Revolution counter 92  
Right-hand traffic, light setting 109  
Rim cleaner 245  
RME, rape seed methyl ester 205  
Rolling away in idle, coasting 197  
RON petrol grade 204  
Roof load 251  
Roof rack 187  
RPA runflat indicator 118  
RSC Runflat System Component, see Run-flat tyres 209  
Rubber parts, care 245  
Runflat indicator RPA 118  
Run-flat tyres 209  
Running in 182  
Running in brake discs 182  
Running in brake pads 182

**S**

Safe seated position 51  
Safety switch, windows 48  
Safety systems, airbags 111  
Saving fuel 193  
Saving settings for seat, mirror 59  
Screen, see Control Display 16  
Screwdriver, see On-board toolkit 224  
Sealing compound 210  
Seat and mirror memory 59  
Seat belt reminder for driver's and front passenger's seat 57  
Seat belt reminder for rear seats 57  
Seat belts 55  
Seat belts, care 245  
Seat heating, front 54  
Seats 51  
Seats, front 51  
Seats, rear 54  
Securing load 187  
Selection list in the instrument cluster 97  
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 83  
Sensors, care 246  
Service history 94  
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 222  
Service requirements, display 93  
Services, ConnectedDrive 6  
Servotronic 134  
Settings, locking/unlocking 44  
Settings on the Control Display 101  
Settings, seats/head restraints 51

- Shift paddles on the steering wheel [84](#)  
 Shift point indicator [95](#)  
 Side airbags [111](#)  
 Side lights [105](#)  
 Signals on unlocking [44](#)  
 Ski and snowboard bag [174](#)  
 Sliding/tilting roof [48](#)  
 Snow chains [213](#)  
 Socket [168](#)  
 Socket in rear passenger compartment [168](#)  
 Socket, on-board diagnosis, OBD [223](#)  
 Soot particle filter [183](#)  
 SOS button [236](#)  
 Sound [6](#)  
 Spanner, see On-board toolkit [224](#)  
 Spare fuse [235](#)  
 Spare wheel, see Emergency wheel [232](#)  
 Special equipment, standard equipment [7](#)  
 Special ID, remote control [33](#)  
 Speed, displaying maximum [95](#)  
 Speed Limit Device, see Manual Speed Limiter [128](#)  
 Speed limiter, manual [128](#)  
 Speed Limit Information [95](#)  
 Speed Limit Information, on-board computer [99](#)  
 Speed limit, see Manual Speed Limiter [128](#)  
 Speed warning [100](#)  
 Split screen [21](#)  
 Split screen view, split screen [21](#)  
 SPORT program, driving dynamics [135](#)  
 Sport program, transmission [84](#)  
 Sports displays [100](#)  
 Sports steering, variable [134](#)  
 Stability control systems [132](#)  
 Start/stop button [72](#)  
 Start function with malfunction [33](#)  
 Starting assistance [237](#)  
 Starting assistance, see DSC [132](#)  
 Starting, see Engine start [73](#)  
 Starting the engine [73](#)  
 Starting the engine, starting assistance [237](#)  
 Status control display, tyres [115](#)  
 Status information, iDrive [21](#)  
 Status of the Owner's Handbook [7](#)  
 Steering support [134](#)  
 Steering wheel, adjusting [62](#)  
 Steering wheel heating [62](#)  
 Steptronic sport transmission, see Steptronic transmission [83](#)  
 Steptronic transmission [83](#)  
 Stopping the engine [74](#)  
 Storage compartment in the centre console [176](#)  
 Storage compartment in the rear [177](#)  
 Storage compartments [175](#)  
 Storage options [175](#)  
 Storage, tyres [209](#)  
 Storage, vehicle [246](#)  
 Suitable engine oil grades [218](#)  
 Summer tyres, tread [207](#)  
 Sun visor [167](#)  
 Supplementary text messages [91](#)  
 Swinging of the trailer, see Trailer Stability Control [190](#)  
 Switches, see Driving area [12](#)  
 Switch for driving dynamics [135](#)  
 Switching off the engine [74](#)  
 Switch-on times, independent ventilation [166](#)  
 Symbols [6](#)  
 Symbols in the status field [21](#)  
 Symbols used [6](#)  
 SYNC program, automatic air conditioning [164](#)

**T**

- Tailgate, automatic [39](#)  
 Tailgate closing [39](#)  
 Tailgate, closing contactlessly [42](#)  
 Tailgate opening [38](#)  
 Tailgate, opening contactlessly [42](#)  
 Tailgate via remote control [37](#)  
 Tail lights [229](#)  
 Tank display [92](#)  
 Technical changes, see Your own safety [8](#)  
 Technical data [250](#)  
 Telephone [6](#)  
 Temperature, air conditioning [161](#)  
 Temperature, automatic air conditioning [163](#)  
 Temperature display, outside temperature [92](#)  
 Temperature, engine [99](#)  
 Tensioning bands, securing load [187](#)  
 Text messages, supplementary [91](#)  
 Thieffproof wheel studs [233](#)  
 Thigh support [53](#)  
 Tilt alarm sensor [46](#)  
 Tilting down, passenger's mirror [61](#)  
 Tool [224](#)  
 Topping up engine oil [217](#)  
 Total weight [251](#)  
 Total weight, permitted [251](#)  
 Touchpad [19](#)  
 Tourist function, see Left-hand/right-hand traffic [109](#)  
 Towing a trailer [188](#)

Towing a trailer, data [256](#)

Towing away [239](#)

Towing, see Tow-starting and towing [239](#)

Tow-starting [239](#)

TPM Tyre Pressure Monitor [115](#)

Traction control [133](#)

TRACTION, driving dynamics [133](#)

Traffic jam assistant, see queue assistant [143](#)

Trailer loads [256](#)

Trailer Stability Control [190](#)

Trailer tow hitch [190](#)

Transmission lockout, unlocking manually [85](#)

Tread, tyres [207](#)

Trip distance recorder [92](#)

Triple turn signal [78](#)

Turn indicator, bulb change [226, 227](#)

Turn indicator rear, changing bulb [229](#)

Turn indicators, operation [78](#)

Turning circle lines, rear-view camera [154](#)

Tyre damage [207](#)

Tyre inflation pressure monitor, TPM [115](#)

Tyre pressure monitoring, see RPA [118](#)

Tyre Pressure Monitor TPM [115](#)

Tyre pressures [206](#)

Tyre replacement [208](#)

Tyre sealant [210](#)

Tyres, everything about wheels and tyres [206](#)

Tyre tread [207](#)

## U

Units of measure [102](#)

Unloaded weight [251](#)

Unlock-button, Steptronic transmission [83](#)

Unlocking/locking using door lock [37](#)

Unlocking/locking with remote control [36](#)

Unlocking, settings [44](#)

Updates after going to press [7](#)

Upholstery care [245](#)

USB interface [168](#)

## V

Vanity mirror [167](#)

Variable light distribution [107](#)

Variable sports steering [134](#)

Vehicle battery [234](#)

Vehicle battery, changing [234](#)

Vehicle equipment [7](#)

Vehicle identification number [9](#)

Vehicle paintwork [244](#)

Vehicle position, GPS positioning [102](#)

Vehicle, running in [182](#)

Ventilation [165](#)

Ventilation, see Independent ventilation [165](#)

VIN, see Vehicle identification number [9](#)

Voice control system [24](#)

## W

Wading [184](#)

Warning and indicator lights, see Check Control [88](#)

Warning indicators, see Check Control [88](#)

Warning messages, see Check Control [88](#)

Warning triangle [237](#)

Warranty [8](#)

Washer fluid [81](#)

Washer jets, windows [81](#)

Washing the vehicle [243](#)

Water on roads [184](#)

Weights [251](#)

Welcome lights [106](#)

Welcome light when unlocking [36](#)

Wheel change [231](#)

Wheel replacement [208](#)

Wheels, everything about wheels and tyres [206](#)

Wheels, runflat indicator RPA [118](#)

Windscreen washer jets [81](#)

Windscreen washing system [79](#)

Windscreen wipers, see Wiper system [79](#)

Winter storage, care and maintenance [246](#)

Winter tyres, right tyres [208](#)

Winter tyres, tread [207](#)

Wiper, fold-out position [81](#)

Wipers [79](#)

Wiper system [79](#)

Wood, care [245](#)

Wordmatch principle, navigation [23](#)

Working in the engine compartment [215](#)

## X

xDrive [134](#)

## Y

Your own safety [8](#)



More about BMW

[www.bmw.com](http://www.bmw.com)



The Ultimate  
Driving Machine

